

TOEFL® iBT

WRITING

托福命题总监 教你征服新托福 写作

秦苏珊（美） 编著

高分范文：传授高效的写作方法
万用写作模板：可以自由搭建作文结构
写作句型库：随时可以写出必考句型
写作预测：按照命题者的出题思路预测新题

托福前命题总监
托福考试开发者和命题准则的缔造者



外语教学与研究出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS

目 录

Contents

[托福考试命题总监致读者（代序）](#)

[i 如何使用本书收获最大？](#)

[Contents Chart 内容一览表](#)

[Section 1 An Overview of the TOEFL® iBT 第1部分 新托福考试怎么命题](#)

[What the TOEFL® iBT Measures 新托福考试考什么](#)

[A Comprehensive Look at the Writing Section 新托福考试怎么命题：写作命题全解](#)

[Section 2 Integrated Writing and Independent Writing 第2部分 综合写作和独立写作](#)

[Task 1 Integrated Writing 第一题 综合写作题全解](#)

[1 Physical Sciences—Paleontology 物理科学常考主题1：古生物学](#)

[2 Humanities and the Arts—Music History 人文艺术常考主题1：音乐史](#)

[3 Life Sciences—Zoology 生命科学常考主题1：动物学](#)

[4 Social Sciences—Archaeology 社会科学常考主题1：考古学](#)

[5 Physical Sciences—Energy 物理科学常考主题2：能源](#)

[6 Humanities and the Arts—Literature 人文艺术常考主题2：文学](#)

[7 Life Sciences—Ecology 生命科学常考主题2：生态环境](#)

[8 Social Sciences—Advertising 社会科学常考主题2：广告](#)

[Task 2 Independent Writing 第二题 独立写作全解](#)

[9 Choose one from two: Do you agree or disagree Do you support or oppose 如何应对二选一题型1](#)

[10 Choose one from two: Some people prefer x, others prefer y Either x or y, which do you choose 如何应对二选一题型2](#)

[11 Explicit compare and contrast Advantages and disadvantages 如何应对“比较与对比”和“利弊”题型](#)

[12 "What": What changes What skills 如何应对What题型](#)

[13 "Why": Why do you think Why is x important 如何应对Why题型](#)

[14 "How": How does x influence y How is x different from y 如何应对How题型](#)

[15 "Hypothetical if": If you could change one thing If you could x 如何应对假设性题型](#)

[16 Open-ended describe and discuss: Discuss the causes Describe a custom 如何应对开放型题型](#)

[Appendix 附录](#)

[The Scoring of the TOEFL® iBT 新托福考试评分](#)

[附录CD页](#)

TOEFL® iBT

WRITING

托福命题总监教你征服新托福写作

秦苏珊（美） 编著

外语教学与研究出版社

FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS

北京 BEIJING

托福考试命题总监致读者（代序）

很长一段时间以来，我的朋友和学生们都强烈要求我写一套新托福考试的备考辅导书。我曾在美国教育考试服务中心（ETS）工作过很多年并取得了终身职位，对那里有很多美好的记忆。我曾在那里的多个岗位任职，从最初的项目作者，一直到负责多种英语考试开发工作的主管，其中就包括托福考试和托业考试的开发工作。因此，我对具体考题和标准化英语考试的专业命题方法十分熟悉。那时，我不仅有机会向专家们学习，而且随着职位的提升，我还有幸参与制定并调整了新的考试评估体系。

这一次，我为大家写了三本专项辅导书：《托福命题总监教你征服新托福阅读听力》、《托福命题总监教你征服新托福口语》和《托福命题总监教你征服新托福写作》。在本系列图书中，我将自己从ETS获得的多年命题经验与我的“有机英语学习方法”相结合，制定出一套全新的新托福考试备考大纲，帮助考生顺利通过新托福考试，并为他们以后的语言学习奠定基础。

对中国读者，我想说的是：本系列图书是专为你们量身编写的。与很多其他西方教育者不同，我因为个人生活和工作的缘故，对中国的文化和你们的学习方式都有所了解，非常清楚你们在学习英语过程中的优势和劣势。所以在本系列图书的编写过程中，我结合你们的优势，通过各种方法来帮助你们在最短的时间内取得最显著的进步。同时，我也指出了你们在学习英语过程中共有的不足之处，以便于你们有重点地去弥补和提高。何为“有机英语学习方法”？即将中国人擅长的结构化学习策略（包括背诵和高仿真模拟题练习）与科学的学习策略有机地结合在一起，可谓中西合璧的一种学习方法和策略。

考生的时间很紧迫，而且考试压力也很大。不过现在你可以放下心来，因为在本系列图书中，我所选取的学习材料和提供的学习策略都能确保你快速提升学习能力并在新托福考试中考取高分。如果认真学习本系列图书，我保证你的时间不会白费。当你坐在考场中时，就会知道自己已经做了最充足的准备。

祝所有的考生好运！

Susan Chyn

秦苏珊

i 如何使用本书收获最大？

★ 谁可以使用本书？

本书专为希望提高写作技能的新托福考试备考者编写。通过运用“有机英语学习方法”，本书将帮助考生进行有重点的系统学习，从而在短时间内提高英语技能并顺利通过新托福考试。英语自学者以及新托福考试辅导教师均可从本书中获益。

★ 本书结构

本书包含两道新托福写作题的分析、解题策略、写作句型库、词汇表、练习和写作预测题。除了以上内容外，还提供地道的高分范文和万用写作模板。

目录之后的“内容一览表”清楚地标示出了写作题型（关键技能）、语境（领域／情境）、赋能技能和PCC PCC学习方法。

第一部分整体介绍新托福考试，详细地描述写作考试的结构以及题型。

第二部分介绍两道写作题型：

前半部分介绍综合写作。这部分共有8章，每两章围绕一个学术领域展开（共四大学术领域）。每一章都有一道写作题例子、解读常考题、高分范文、万用写作模板、词汇和写作句型库。每一章会集中训练赋能技能或PCC PCC学习方法，例如，综合写作题如何构思、怎样记笔记等。

后半部分介绍独立写作题。这部分也是8章，每章有6道写作题（其中有5道是写作预测题）、高分范文、万用写作模板和写作句型库。根据独立写作题题目的措辞和逻辑，独立写作题分为8种类型。每一章介绍一种写作类型，并提供写作方法。

由于“有机英语学习方法”是一种非常科学的学习方法，同一语境或题型的高仿真写作例题和万用写作模板都集中在一起，因此考生的学习效率会很高。考生会发现自己不会忘记从本书学会的词汇，因为他们是跟随着本书的结构在语境中学习词汇的。

通过本书的学习，自学者和教师会发现，就复杂性和抽象性而言，写作题型和赋能技能是按由易至难的顺序来编排的。这就减轻了考生的备考负担，提高其写作能力，同时还能缩短备考时间。

本书的编排非常灵活。考生可以按顺序学习第1—8章，先专注综合写作题，然后再看第9—16章的独立写作题。或者，考生可以先看第1章，即第一个介绍综合写作题的章节，然后再看第9章，即第一个介绍独立写作题的章节。每个人都可以根据自己的兴趣和需要来选择复习方案。

附录部分介绍新托福写作考试的评分标准，相信对大家大有帮助。

★ 什么是“有机英语学习方法”？有什么特别之处？

对考生而言，想在新托福考试中获取高分，最可靠的途径就是采取一种新的备考方法。显然，任何新方法都必须考虑到考试的设计特点，还要能帮助考生认识到自己的优势和劣势。“有机英语学习方法”就是这样一种全新的学习方法。它能让考生充分利用已有的知识，集中力量攻破未知知识，从而在相对较短的时间内获取高分。

“有机英语学习方法”包括以下三方面：1) 基础技能（语法、词汇、拼写、语音和语调以及流利程度）；2) 关键技能（听、说、读、写）；3) 赋能技能（各种认知技能、信息加工处理技能和学习技能，如略读和扫读能力、规划设计和做笔记的能力、理解概念和文字的常规逻辑能力，以及打字技能）。

1· 基础技能

为什么基础技能对新托福考试的写作部分很重要？尽管不会直接考查词汇和语法，但它们影响考生的读、听和写的能力。对写作而言，最重要的基础技能是高级语法，包括句型的多样性和准确性、衔接（“连接词”和其他衔接策略）及词汇。ETS考官会对这些因素进行考查，因为它们涉及评分规则中的语言运用及“统一性、渐进性和连贯性”。

1) 词汇和语块

词汇和语块是英语学习的基础。“有机英语学习方法”中词汇的学习方法强调在语境中学习词汇、掌握其用法。对英语不是母语的写作者而言，学术词汇具有很大的挑战性，因此本书对这一点非常重视，每一章都收录了经过精心挑选、涉及最重要语境的学术语块。

2) 语法

ETS评分规则表明“语言运用连贯流畅”是取得最高分5分的要求之一。考生要能够写出复杂的语法结构，如：Fieldwork allows anthropologists to understand many cultural belief systems.更重要的是能清楚地表达自己的观点。表达不准确或者有歧义会降低作文的得分。因为在不同的语境中练习语法的运用对作文拿高分十分重要，所以每一章“建立自己的写作句型库”中都精选了重要的句型。考生应该记住这些句型，并且在练习写作时尽量多用。

3) 发音

学语言过程中，口语说得好不好受很多因素的影响，包括发音、重读（音节和单词）、音调和停顿等。语言的韵律和节奏可以帮助其他人理解我们在说什么。在新托福写作考试中，掌握英语的发音习惯可以帮助考生更好地理解听力讲座的内容。此外，科学家已经证明，当人们将词汇的发音和重读模式内在化之后，就更容易记住词汇和句型。

4) 拼写

正确的拼写在新托福写作考试中并不是特别重要。然而，应用语言学家们发现，了解拼写规范和拼写法的学习者通常对词义和语言结构的理解更加深刻。

2· 关键技能

在“有机英语学习方法”中，“关键技能”指听、说、读、写四个技能。ETS用不同的题目来考查特定的语言技能。例如，在阅读考试中，一个关键技能就是推理；在口语考试中，六道口语题分别考查六种关键技能；写作考试则用两种题型来考查两种关键技能：一道涉及综合技能的综合写作题和一道基于个人知识和经验的独立写作题。

3· 赋能技能

“有机英语学习方法”中的赋能技能可帮助考生在短时间内成为高效的英语学习者。在新托福综合口语和写作中，考生要将他们看到或听到的英语（输入）快速转换成口头或书面英语（输出），这种能力非常具有挑战性。传统的应试技巧对考生有一些帮助，但是，这些技巧不足以让考生显著提高成绩。

1) 改述能力

在“有机英语学习方法”的所有赋能技能中，改述是获得新托福高分的最重要技能，这有以下几个原因：首先，新托福考试的阅读部分直接考查改述能力；听力、口语和写作部分间接考查改述能力。阅读和听力部分的选项很多都是对原文的改述。比如，在阅读部分，有一类难度较大的题型，即句子简化题——改述题。其次，通过改述练习，考生被迫用英语思维——这将使考生在考试中更加自信，并提高做题速度。词汇量不足或对一些学术领域缺乏了解的考生，很难改述学术语言。为了培养考生的改述能力，本书从第1章开始就引导考生熟悉各种各样的语境，帮助扩大词汇量、积累实用句型、提高阅读速度、提高听力水平和用英语思考的能力。

2) 记笔记的能力

在新托福考试所有涉及听力的题目中，记笔记对答题至关重要。因此，考生要尽早开始练习记笔记。能够熟练记笔记的考生可以用提纲形式记笔记，其他考生可能更喜欢用缩写形式记关键词。也许有些水平比较低的考生觉得听力题太难，记笔记会分散注意力，那么这些考生应等到听力能力提高之后再练习记笔记。

3) 预测下文的能力

阅读文章时，如果能大致猜到下文内容，就可以加快阅读速度，略过不重要的信息。听讲座或对话时，如果能预测教授接下来要讲什么，即使没听懂一两个词，也不用太担心。本书第3章会介绍预测讲座内容的技巧。

4) 略读能力

写作部分的阅读短文只有300词左右，因此略读应该没有问题。本书第8章还介绍了一些阅读技巧，教考生在遇到不认识的行业术语时应如何处理。

5) 扫读能力

和略读一样，在写作考试中由于文章相对较短，扫读不是问题。

6) 宏观篇章技能（如：开头语、主题扩展、例证、结论等）

宏观篇章技能是指对口头或书面文本中“较大”的篇章特点的掌握。这些篇章特点可能是一篇阅读文章的组织结构，如作者开始谈论某个历史事件的方式。另外，理解讲座中例子的能力也是一种宏观技能。当考生理解了篇章特点之后，就能进行“自上而下的信息处理”了。这就意味着，即使考生不认识文章中的某些单词，也能基本理解文章的主要意思。宏观篇章技能是写作考试中很重要的技能，因此，本书用了五章的篇幅对其作了介绍。

7) 微观篇章技能（如：连接词、信号词等）

微观篇章技能是指对一篇文章或听力文本的语言特征的掌握能力。这些特征既包括词的发音，也包括文章、讲座、高分范文用的词汇和写作句型库中的“信号词”。显然，考生都希望记住那些经常出现在新托福考试中的单词和短语，因此本书很多章节里都有归纳总结的表格。

“有机英语学习方法”是中式学习方法和西式学习方法的有效结合。它包含中国学生擅长的结构化学习方法，以及写作句型库、高分范文和万用写作模板等；还从西方人的学习方法中吸纳了以语篇为基础的科学方法来教授英语。例题和预测题的仿真度都是最高的。

本系列丛书的另一特别之处是：所有章节都按照语境和“篇章特点”进行编排，这不仅能

帮助考生培养高效的学习能力，还为教学提供了平台。

★ 什么是PCC PCC学习方法？

为了提高学习效率，我们从“有机英语学习方法”中提炼出六大步骤，以帮助考生克服最常见的弱点。这一重要的方法就是“PCC PCC学习方法”。

PCC PCC是代表如下六大语言学习目标的缩略词：

- P=Solidify **Pronunciation** skills 强化发音技能
- C=Memorize language in **Chunks** 按语块记忆语言
- C=Focus on one **Context** at a time 每次只关注一个语境

- P=Develop **Paraphrasing** skills 培养改述技能
- C=Consolidate skills in **Cohesion** 增强衔接技能
- C=Consolidate skills in **Coherence** 增强连贯技能

由于各种语言技能通过内在的联系合成为一体，“PCC PCC学习方法”的六个方面相辅相成，共同帮助备考者提高语言能力。通过“有机英语学习方法”科学、语境化的学习安排和以应用为基础的“PCC PCC学习方法”，新托福考生的英语技能将会有突破性的提高。

★ 自学备考者应如何运用本书进行自学？

使用本书的自学者将看到立竿见影的效果。首先，自学者应制订一个自学计划，列出时间表和学习安排。如果自学者认为自己的语法比较弱，那么就多花时间在语法结构上；如果自学者在词汇方面最弱，就应该花更多的时间背词汇，尤其是不熟悉领域的术语；如果听力最成问题，考生就应该在听力上多花时间。我建议考生重视发音，尤其是单词节奏和重音，因为这可以帮助应对听力。

自学者每天都应该背一背词汇语块和写作句型库里的实用句型，最好还要记它们的改述方式。例如，自学者可以把theoretical perspective记作一个语块，把theoretical point of view记为它的同义改述。或者自学者也可以把There has been much discussion about...和There has been considerable debate about...放在一起记。两个放在一起记能达到最好的学习效果！

但请记住一点：如果考官认为你是在背别人写的范文，可能会给你打低分。所以，要把本书的高分范文或模板进行“个性化”处理，即作文中出现你个人经历过的事情。

★ 教师在课堂上应如何运用本书？

首先，教师要帮助学生更好地理解什么是语境和场景，向学生说明“PCC PCC学习方法”中的改述如何能帮助考生实现高分目标。教师还应解释每一章万用写作模板中的语法结构，也可以让学生记住万用写作模板，并考查他们对这些结构的掌握情况。

教师还可以让学生使用每一章的模板，练习写“个性化”的作文。为了让学生们在独立写作中有好的写作思路，教师可以安排学生单独或以小组为单位，在规定的时间内进行写作构思，列出提纲。限定时间可以再现真实的考试场景，也让这种活动更加有趣。

为了帮学生理解综合写作题中的讲座，教师可以让他们两人一组或多人组成一个小组，轮流扮演教授大声阅读讲座文本。如果时间充足，“听众”还可以向“教授”提问。

★ 更多资源

多年来我们已经与教师和学生成功地使用了这些方法，学习效果非常显著。更多资源可登录<http://blog.sina.com.cn/susanchyn>。敬请留言或发纸条给我，你的任何问题我都会悉心回答。

★ 本书仅有8篇综合写作题的范文和48篇独立写作的范文，这些足够吗？

有些考生认为，范文背得多就能得高分。事实并非如此。首先，考场上考生不一定遇到与自己背过的一模一样的题目。其次，考生背了范文通常只学会一些词汇，并没有学会如何写一篇能获得高分且有实质内容的连贯作文。

那么本书如何帮助考生获得高分呢？针对综合写作题，四大学术领域（物理科学、人文艺术、生命科学和社会科学）的每个领域都给出了两道例题。这些例题都经过精挑细选，能够代表很多不同的题目。它们包含了要考查的“本质”问题，可以代表最典型的题材、最典型的阅读和讲座的结构与风格。教授常在讲座中使用相同的短语来讨论三个论点，这些例题中都包含了。研究了这些有代表性的材料，考生可以迅速了解写好综合写作题的因素。通过记词汇、万用写作模板，看高分范文，考生就能彻底掌握得高分的一切要素。

针对独立写作题，每一章都有六道题及相应的高分范文和万用写作模板。由于本书将题目按类别来进行分章节讨论，考生可以从中：1）更好地理解每道题的要求；2）明白什么是考官喜欢的优秀作文；3）记住并学会运用章节中的实用句型和万用写作模板。

总之，如果考生从本书的每一章中都学到写作技能，那么不论遇到什么题目都能发挥自如。

★ 什么是“语境框架”？

根据写作题的措辞和逻辑，每道独立写作题都可归入一个语境框架。有了这些框架，自学者便知道该怎么写，知道怎么组织分论点。

独立写作题可以分为八个语境框架（按照在考试中出现频率的高低排列）：

1 · Choose one from two: Do you agree or disagree / Do you support or oppose

二选一题型1

2 · Choose one from two: Either x or y, which do you choose / Some people prefer x, others prefer y

二选一题型2

3 · Explicit compare and contrast / Advantages and disadvantages

“比较与对比”和“利弊”题型

4 · "What"

What题型

5 · "Why"

Why题型

6 · "How"

How题型

7 · Hypothetical "if"

假设性题型

8 · Open-ended describe and discuss

开放型题型

★ 如何利用“建立自己的写作句型库”提高写作分数？

“建立自己的写作句型库”中的句子，是从高分范文、阅读短文和讲座中摘出来的句型。这些句型不仅有助于理解综合写作题的材料，对写作文也很有用。

注意，这些句型都是精心挑选的。如果自学者记住了，就能写出一个结构清晰且逻辑连贯的作文“骨架”，只需要再添加一些论据让自己的作文富有个性化就可以了。

★ 如何利用本书的语块提高分数？

本书前八章的语块都是从每章的阅读短文和讲座中选取的。考生可以把这些语块列表当作词汇表来背。记住了这些词汇，会使备考和词汇积累更高效。

★ 如何利用每章的高分范文提高写作分数？

本书高分范文是很重要的学习工具。自学者和教师可以按照不同的方式利用这些高分范文提高写作技能。高分范文对自学者最明显的帮助就是提供学习的范本，自学者可以学习到：组织结构、思路的展开、用词、长度、改述等。其次，写作句型库中的句型来源于高分范文，自学者可以从单独的句型开始学习，再观察在整篇文章中这些句型起到什么作用。最后，因为每篇高分范文都和万用写作模板放在一起，自学者可以看到如何填充模板，使之成为一篇高分作文。

★ 如何利用万用写作模板提高写作分数？

语言是复杂的——没有“灵丹妙药”，没有一个适合所有题目、所有学生水平的神奇模板。因此，本书每章都包含一个模板，配合某一大类新托福考试写作题目及其高分范文。

由于每一章都集中讨论一个语境（第一题是学术语境，第二题是语境框架），万用写作模板为这一类的所有写作题提供了一个写作范本。例如，第5章设置了一道和能源相关的写作题，模板提供的是“用于对某事件有争议的万用写作模板”。这是因为很多写作题都涉及各种能源问题，而很多教授质疑当前讨论的一些有关能源问题的观点。

因此，自学者可以通过此模板学习文章结构的组织方法，领会其用词和构句。自学者还可以把万用写作模板作为一个“起点”，写出具有个性化的作文。

Contents Chart 内容一览表

章节	写作题目 (关键技能)	语境 (领域 / 情境)	赋能技能或 PCC PCC 策略
1	第一题 综合写作题	Physical Sciences — Paleontology 物理科学常考主题 1：古生物学	赋能技能 宏观篇章技能： ● 综合写作题的快速解题方法和篇章结构
2	第一题 综合写作题	Humanities and the Arts — Music History 人文艺术常考主题 1：音乐史	赋能技能 综合写作题如何记笔记
3	第一题 综合写作题	Life Sciences — Zoology 生命科学常考主题 1：动物学	赋能技能 预测下文： ● 预测讲座内容和观点
4	第一题 综合写作题	Social Sciences — Archaeology 社会科学常考主题 1：考古学	PCC PCC 学习方法 连词的衔接
5	第一题 综合写作题	Physical Sciences — Energy 物理科学常考主题 2：能源	赋能技能 宏观篇章技能： ● 个性化的写作
6	第一题 综合写作题	Humanities and the Arts — Literature 人文艺术常考主题 2：文学	赋能技能 微观篇章技能： ● 转述第三方观点
7	第一题 综合写作题	Life Sciences — Ecology 生命科学常考主题 2：生态环境	PCC PCC 学习方法 通过重复关键词做到前后连贯
8	第一题 综合写作题	Social Sciences — Advertising 社会科学常考主题 2：广告	赋能技能 微观篇章技能： ● 应对行话与行业术语
9	第二题 独立写作题	Choose one from two: Do you agree or disagree Do you support or oppose 如何应对二选一题型 1	赋能技能 宏观篇章技能： ● 独立写作题的构思和篇章结构
10	第二题 独立写作题	Choose one from two: Some people prefer x, others prefer y Either x or y, which do you choose 如何应对二选一题型 2	赋能技能 微观篇章技能： ● 表达偏爱
11	第二题 独立写作题	Explicit compare and contrast Advantages and disadvantages 如何应对“比较与对比”和“利弊”题型	赋能技能 宏观篇章技能： ● 有条理地进行比较
12	第二题 独立写作题	“What”: What changes What skills 如何应对 What 题型	赋能技能 宏观篇章技能： ● 如何写出漂亮的第一段
13	第二题 独立写作题	“Why”: Why do you think Why is x important 如何应对 Why 题型	赋能技能 微观篇章技能： ● 解释原因
14	第二题 独立写作题	“How”: How does x influence y How is x different from y 如何应对 How 题型	PCC PCC 学习方法 利用指示词来衔接
15	第二题 独立写作题	“Hypothetical if”: If you could change one thing If you could x 如何应对假设性题型	赋能技能 微观篇章技能： ● 描述假设性情形
16	第二题 独立写作题	Open-ended describe and discuss: Discuss the causes Describe a custom 如何应对开放型题型	PCC PCC 学习方法 逻辑上做到前后连贯

Section 1 An Overview of the TOEFL® iBT
第1部分 新托福考试怎么命题

What the TOEFL® iBT Measures

新托福考试考什么

通过前面的介绍，我们已经了解了与新托福考试有关的各种学习方法和技能，现在让我们来快速浏览一下新托福考试的实际情况。新托福考试的时长大约为四小时，分为四个部分，阅读和听力部分在前，口语和写作部分在后，之间有一次短暂的休息。

新托福考试

(上色字体部分为不计分的实验性题目)

题型	阅读文章、讲座或对话	题目	时长
阅读	3 篇阅读文章 +2 篇实验性阅读文章	每篇 12 ~ 14 道题目	60 分钟 +40 分钟
听力	2 段对话 4 段讲座 或者 +1 段考前讲座和 1 段考前对话	每篇 5 道题目 每篇 6 道题目	60 分钟 +30 分钟
中间休息			10 分钟
口语	2 小段阅读文章 2 小段对话 2 小段讲座	6 道题目	20 分钟
写作	1 小段阅读文章 1 小段讲座	2 道题目	50 分钟

口语和写作部分没有不计分的实验性试题（即加试）。

新托福考试的四类考题都允许考生记笔记。考试结束后，所有笔记会被统一收集起来并销毁。

A Comprehensive Look at the Writing Section

新托福考试怎么命题：写作命题全解

本章将逐一介绍新托福考试的两道写作题，并提供一些概括性的写作策略。接下来的16章会具体介绍备考和应试技巧。

似乎大多数考生对新托福写作考试都怀着复杂的感情。从积极的一面来看，写作考试不像口语考试那样让人胆战心惊，因为考生作答之后可以修改；而且，很多考生对写作第二题，即独立写作题的形式已经很熟悉了，因为独立写作题的考试形式和旧托福写作题一致，同很多学校里的写作考试形式或者其他考试形式都类似。另外一方面，考生不太喜欢第一道综合写作题，因为这篇综合作文要根据阅读文章和学术讲座进行写作。请大家不要灰心！本书会教你怎样攻克所有的这些障碍。

〔写作考试怎么进行〕

同新托福考试的其他部分一样，写作考试也在电脑上进行，这也就意味着考生需要录入自己的文章。写作考试是最后一部分，考生完成口语最后一道题后，就要根据指示直接进入写作部分的考试。

写作考试时，电脑屏幕的角落上也会有时钟。写作时需要注意时间，因为必须为每道题留出合理的时间：第一题20分钟，第二题30分钟。考生开始做题时，时钟就会开始倒计时。考试时间快结束时，电脑上会出现提示信息。

考生可以记笔记，利用笔记信息来组织文章结构。笔记可以记在纸上，也可以直接记在电脑上。考试结束后，所有的草稿纸都会被收回并销毁。两篇作文的电子版会发送到ETS的评分网络。

〔新托福写作题考查什么〕

下面请看新托福考试写作题的考试要求：

题目	语言情境	综合材料	作文字数	写作时间
第一题：综合写作	学术	学术阅读文章和学术讲座	150 ~ 225 词	20 分钟
第二题：独立写作	个人知识和经验	无	300 ~ 400 词	30 分钟

从上表可知，新托福写作考试有两类题型：综合写作和独立写作。第一题综合写作有好几个步骤：考生先要读一篇小短文，再听一个小讲座，然后根据小短文和小讲座的内容来写作。第二题独立写作要求考生运用自己的个人知识和经验来写作。因此，写作部分考查的是考生在学术话题和一般话题方面的写作能力。然而，它也间接考查考生的阅读和听力技能、学术词汇、分析性思维能力和组织观点的能力。

〔写作评分准则〕

写作评分准则考虑到了两篇作文的意图和目的指向性，所以综合写作题和独立写作题分别有两套评分准则。评分者能给的最高分是5分，最低分是0分。一般0分很少见，但是如

果考生什么都没写、跑题，或者完全照抄题目或阅读文章里的句子，那么只能得0分。

本书提供了很多如何获得高分的指导信息，此外附录还专门讲述评分和分数报告。

〔两种写作题型的比较〕

新托福考试写作部分的两道写作题分别考查不同的技能。考生要想得高分，就必须清楚每道题的考试目的、特征和评分标准。

★ 第一题：综合写作

第一道题是关于一个学术话题的综合写作题。该话题肯定逃不出ETS选材的四大学术领域：物理科学、人文艺术、生命科学和社会科学。考生先要阅读一篇大约300词的短文，然后听一个相同话题的讲座录音。大多数情况下，讲座的人是教授，他会针对阅读短文中的观点进行辩驳。

听小讲座时，考生应该记笔记，尤其是在教授讲述三个分论点时。听完讲座后，考生会听到题目，题目也会出现在电脑屏幕上。在这个过程中，考生可以参考阅读过的短文。

综合写作题想拿高分，考生必须完整再现讲座中的重要信息，即必须准确抓住教授提到的三个分论点。此外，考生的作文还必须前后连贯、易于理解。一些小错误不会影响得分。

考生得高分的关键就是从阅读短文和听力讲座中捕捉重要信息，即输入内容（INPUT），并通过描述主要话题及解释三个分论点把讲座中的信息转化成自己的语言，即输出内容（OUTPUT）。

★ 第二题：独立写作

大部分独立写作题给考生提供一些意见性的陈述，要求考生回答“同意或不同意”，并展开论述，说明理由；另一些题目则要求考生比较某个特定现象的优点。事实上，这只是其中的一类题目。总体而言，有八种不同类型的题目。根据题目的措辞和逻辑，每一道题目都可以看作一个语境框架。本书会一一解析并向考生讲述评分者期待什么样的作文。

第二题想得高分，考生的作文必须达到以下要求：组织结构有条理、清晰，论证充分展开（考生要有大量的细节和例子来支撑自己的观点）。观点之间的逻辑必须通顺、易懂。一些小错误不影响得分。

〔新托福考试写作的总体夺分策略〕

考试前的准备

- 1· 了解两道作文题的要求。例如，综合写作题是否要概括全文？独立写作题是否应该给出自己的观点？每一部分的写作时间是多少？
- 2· 了解两道作文题的评分准则，注意不同之处。例如第一题要求全面讨论该话题，指出教授提出的三个反驳阅读文章的观点。
- 3· 按照每一题的考试时间来练习写作。
- 4· 尽量多背本书“建立自己的写作句型库”中的实用句型，使你的“写作工具箱”完善起来。
- 5· 平时练习写作时多改述短语和句子。评分者希望看到考生的改述能力。

考试时要注意

综合写作题：

- 1· 快速阅读文章，找出主要论点。不要担心细节，因为讲座中会出现。
- 2· 听力录音开始播放时，开始思考整个话题。如果有不清楚的地方，利用细节和自己的知识去猜测。
- 3· 仔细听录音，记下阅读短文和讲座的结构性笔记。记下论点，并用英语记下关键词和例证。
- 4· 如果觉得自己第一篇作文写得不好，不要惊慌。保持良好的心态，集中注意力完成独立写作题。
- 5· 不要逐字使用本书中的万用写作模板，尽量使其内容和用词个性化。

独立写作题：

- 1· 合理分配时间，确保每一步都能够完成。例如，要有足够的时间进行构思，以确保论点的连贯性。
- 2· 不要以“I agree with the statement”开头。首段的前两句最好是介绍性的文字，为没看过题目的读者提供语境。
- 3· 用有效的连接词把论点串联起来。
- 4· 不要用不常用的奇特词汇。用低频词汇并不一定能得高分，但用词错误一定会被扣分。
- 5· 不要一字不落地用本书中的万用写作模板，尽量使其内容和用词个性化。
- 6· 不要以为作文写得越长就越能得高分。评分者不是外行，作文字数要和作文的质量相平衡。
- 7· 不要以以下形式结尾：“That's it!”或“That's all!”或“OK, I'm finished.”

Section 2 Integrated Writing and Independent Writing

第2部分 综合写作和独立写作

Task 1 Integrated Writing

第一题 综合写作题全解

〔综合写作题如何考？〕

首先，考生要阅读一篇主题选自四个学术领域的学术短文。接下来会听到一段讲座：一位教授就阅读短文话题的某一点发表自己的见解。讲座结束后，考生需要写出讲座的要点，阐明讲座中教授的论点与阅读短文中的论点是否一致，这是题目明确要求的。考生需写出论点的相似之处或不同之处。要想得高分，考生需要准确且尽可能多地捕捉并传达讲座的要点。

★ 短文

阅读短文的长度大约230~300词，考生需要在3分钟内阅读完。这意味着考生平时做练习时至少要保证每分钟100个词的阅读速度。

阅读短文涉及的主题选自四大学术领域：物理科学、人文艺术、生命科学和社会科学。阅读短文通常有四个段落。第一段概述概念、事物或事件。接下来的三段内容针对话题的三个要点进行阐述。如果文章介绍一项新技术，例如太阳能，第一段会给出太阳能的定义并作简要描述。之后的三段可能会谈论太阳能技术的益处。

阅读短文时不一定要记笔记，因为写作文的过程中考生还可以返回去看。不过，阅读时可以记下一两个词，以助于集中注意力。

★ 讲座

阅读时间结束后，阅读短文将会从电脑屏幕上隐退，接着电脑屏幕上出现一张教授的照片。讲座主题与阅读短文的主题一致，但可能会从不同的角度展开讨论。也就是说，大多数情况下，教授质疑阅读短文的论点，不过偶尔也有赞同阅读短文论点的时候。录音材料大约230~300个词，大约播放2分钟。

听录音时考生应记笔记。实际上，对于综合写作题的讲座来说，记好笔记至关重要。结构性的笔记能够抓住阅读短文论点和讲座论点的一致和分歧，有助于拿高分。

一般情况下，教授会在讲座中就阅读短文的三个分论点发表看法。如果讲座的论点与阅读短文的论点相悖，那么教授所提的每个分论点都是在反驳阅读中的某个分论点。这就体现了笔记的重要性——记录每个论点和论据。

大多数情况下，教授会开篇点题，例如：“……表面看来是个行之有效的方法，但是实际上，阅读短文提到的方法不正确。”有时候，教授的表述也可能留有余地，承认阅读短文中的观点并非完全错误，但是观点会误导读者。例如，教授可能会说：“诚然，做某事有消极的方面，但是这些方面被过分夸大了。”因此，考生从讲座的第一句就能大致了解教授的态度。第3章会讲到如何预测教授讲座内容的具体策略。

讲座结束后，考生会听到题目，该题目也会显示在电脑屏幕上。此外，屏幕上会再次出现阅读短文。

〔综合写作题的题目还原〕

综合写作题的措辞形式各异，经常出现的有以下几种形式：

1 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they **challenge** the specific **points** made in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述这些论点如何质疑阅读短文中的论点。

2 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how the new laws helped to **address** the specific **problems** discussed in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述新法规如何有助于解决阅读短文中讨论的问题。

3 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they **cast doubt on** the specific **solutions** presented in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述这些论点如何质疑阅读短文中提到的具体解决方案。

4 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they **cast doubt on** the specific **points** made in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述这些论点如何质疑阅读短文中的具体论点。

5 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they **oppose** specific **points** made in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述这些论点如何反驳阅读短文中的具体论点。

6 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they **respond to** the specific **arguments** made in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述这些论点如何回应阅读短文中的具体论点。

7 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they **cast doubt on** specific **theories** discussed in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述这些论点如何质疑阅读短文中讨论的具体看法。

8 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they **answer** the specific **problems** presented in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述这些论点如何回应阅读短文中提到的具体问题。

9 · Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they **strengthen** the specific **points** made in the reading passage.

总结讲座中的论点，阐述这些论点如何使阅读短文中的具体论点更有说服力。

〔 评分准则 〕

综合写作题评分准则对作文中是否涵盖“讲座中的要点”有严格的要求。如果遗漏了要点，评分者会相应扣分。

〔 什么样的作文才能吸引评分者？ 〕

作文最好控制在150~225词。超过225个词不会扣分。许多考生认为写得越多，评分者给的分数会越高，所以就洋洋洒洒地写得很长。作文长度不是衡量能否拿高分的标准！综合写作题，考生要注意以下几点：

1 · 切题（按照题目要求写出讲座中的要点）。

2 · 谋篇布局（包括文章前后连贯、结构合理、表达流畅）。

3 · 语言要有连贯性（尽量避免语法和用词错误，注意句子与句子之间的衔接及句型的多样性）。

作文中偶尔出现一些无关紧要的语法错误、用词不当或拼写错误，不会被扣分。但是，一旦评分者发现考生将阅读短文中的内容照搬过来凑字数，就会毫不留情地扣分。

〔 怎么才能拿到高分？ 〕

要想拿高分，有以下几种方法：

1· 考前多练习写作。

考生可以针对各类学术主题进行句子、段落和文章的写作练习。在练习过程中多写几稿并反复修改。

2· 用上本书里的万用写作模板和写作句型库里的实用句型。

3· 阅读各个学科各类主题的学术文章，中英文均可。

一些普通的学术概念或定义特别有用，因为诸多定义在综合写作题的阅读短文和讲座中都会有所涉及。

〔 综合写作题的四个语境 〕

与新托福考试其他题型一致，综合写作题涉及以下四个学术语境：

- 1· 物理科学
- 2· 人文艺术
- 3· 生命科学
- 4· 社会科学

1 Physical Sciences—Paleontology

物理科学常考主题1：古生物学

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 综合写作题的快速解题方法
 - 综合写作题如何设定最理想的篇章结构
- 解读常考题

新托福综合写作题涉及物理科学的题目覆盖了十分广泛的话题，包括气候、海洋、地震、沙漠、天文学、光与声、环境、触觉以及化学、地质学、自然地理学方面的原理。话题和原理涉及的概念不会太高深，因此考生都能够理解。

苏珊举例

Narrator: This section measures writing to communicate in an academic environment. There are two writing tasks.

For Writing Task 1, the integrated writing task, you will read a short passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question. For Writing Task 2, the independent writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now listen to the directions for Writing Task 1.

For Writing Task 1, you will have three minutes to read a short academic passage. You may take notes. The passage will be removed and you will listen to a lecture about the same topic. Again, you may take notes.

You will have 20 minutes to write a response about the relationship between the lecture and the reading. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. Do not give your personal opinion. You will be able to see the reading passage again. You may use your notes.

An effective response will be 150 to 225 words. You will be rated on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content. If you finish your response before time is up, you may go on to Writing Task 2.

Begin reading now.

The dinosaurs known as sauropods were the largest animals ever to walk the Earth. One sauropod, the Brachiosaurus or "arm lizard," weighed over 50 tons and was very tall, the equivalent of a three-story building. Brachiosaurus adults measured over 80 feet. Brachiosaurus' necks took up a

third of this length, extending 30 feet. Its tail was also very long, serving as a counterbalance for the neck. Because the animal was limited by its huge size and shape, scientists believe it was probably confined to a water habitat.

For one thing, on land the short legs of Brachiosaurus would have been unable to support such a large mass. Its frame would have collapsed, the bones being crushed by the weight. In water, however, buoyancy would help support the bodies of these large animals, allowing them to stand and even move about, just as large crocodiles are supported by water in rivers and swamps.

Second, it is unlikely that Brachiosaurus could have lifted its neck to reach tree leaves on land due to the weight of its head and long neck. Because this giant dinosaur ate 400 pounds of food a day, it would have needed a ready food supply. Thus, Brachiosaurus could only have survived by dipping its long neck under the water and feeding on aquatic plants in the many lakes and swamps that existed in the warm Jurassic Period.

Finally, because its nostrils are located at the top of its head, the Brachiosaurus could have spent much of the time mostly submerged in deep lake waters. In such habitats, the dinosaurs would have used their nostrils to breathe, like swimmers use snorkels.

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.
[Play Track 1. The transcript is found at the end of this chapter.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture you just heard, explaining how they cast doubt on the specific theories discussed in the reading passage.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

Exercise 1

根据阅读短文和讲座，完成上面这道作文题。写完作文后，继续学习下一部分内容，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

★ 赋能技能 宏观篇章技能：综合写作题的快速解题方法和篇章结构

1 · 快速解题的三个简单步骤

- 1) 阅读短文的过程中，明确作者的立场，找到三个分论点。
- 2) 听讲座的过程中，抓住反驳阅读短文的论点（少数情况下论点和阅读短文一致）并做笔记。
- 3) 写作文时，概括做讲座教授的立场，列出三个分论点。在时间允许的情况下，写得越详细越好。

2 · 综合写作题最理想的篇章结构

第一段总结做讲座教授的观点，要充分结合具体的语境让并非专家的读者能够理解。考生要尽量用自己的话改述，在总结要点的时候牢记PCC PCC学习方法（发音、语块、语境、改述、衔接、连贯）。

接下来分三段具体阐述讲座中的三个分论点。也就是说，综合写作题的作文要分为四个段落。

记住，在写综合写作题的作文时，不能融入自己的观点。如果加入自己的观点，分数会很低。只有写独立写作题作文时才能够涉及自己的个人观点。

● 综合作文题的高分策略：

- 1 · 仔细阅读短文，弄清作者的论点或观点以及三个分论点。例如，上面那篇关于恐龙的阅读原文，论点是“科学家们认为腕龙有可能生活在水中”。
- 2 · 可以简要记录阅读原文中的关键词。不过，写作文的时候电脑屏幕上会出现阅读原文，所以不做笔记也没有关系。
- 3 · 仔细听讲座，认真、有技巧地做笔记。利用阅读原文中的信息来理解教授所讲的内容和论点。
- 4 · 通常来讲，教授的论点与阅读原文的论点是对立的。不过也有极少数情况，教授会补充一些信息来支持阅读原文的论点。
- 5 · 考生无须详细记录阅读原文中的论点，但是一定要详细记录讲座中的论点。不过更重要的是，考生必须要真正理解教授的推理思路与阅读原文的推理思路有何不同。
- 6 · 讲座的篇章结构一般与阅读原文的篇章结构相似：开篇提出论点，接下来的三段详细阐述。听讲座时要谨记这种篇章结构以便抓住关键信息。
- 7 · 不要照搬阅读原文里的词句，要用自己的话改述论点。
- 8 · 作文的篇章结构尽量与讲座的篇章结构一致：开篇总结话题，给出陈述教授立场和论点的主题句，接下来的三段分别阐述三个分论点。
- 9 · 不要浪费时间将阅读原文里的论点一一罗列出来，评分者可不会被你的小伎俩蒙骗。这么做只会浪费时间，并影响最终的分数。
- 10 · 写作文时尽量用自己的话进行改述，不要一字不落地照搬题目。可以照搬学术概念和专业术语中的语块，其他就用自己的话来陈述。
- 11 · 不要试图超越自己真实的英语水平，将作文写得很高深。清楚、准确的表述要胜过华而不实、没有条理的文章。一旦出现严重的错误就会被扣分，表达含糊也会被扣分，因此还是使用自己习惯的语言来表述清楚就可以了。
- 12 · 即便是总结教授的论点，用词也要恰当、明确，避免模糊的表达，如：The professor talks about changes in recent years.完整、明确的表达是：The professor talks about the recent trend of people reacting negatively to commercial advertisements.尽量做到语言达意，富有条理。如果用了华丽的词汇，但是意思却含糊不清或用词不准确，评分者也会扣分。
- 13 · 控制好考试时间。

高分范文

In the lecture, the professor talked about Brachiosaurus' habitat. Disputing the passage's arguments that this particular dinosaur lived in water, she **cited several pieces of evidence**（引用了几个证据） showing that it lived near water.

First, she said there was fossil evidence of Brachiosaurus' footprints on land. The evidence shows that some sauropods walked on four feet in groups and youngsters may have to run on their hind legs to keep up with the adults. This evidence contradicts the claim in the passage that Brachiosaurus' legs could not support their massive weight and had to rely on water buoyancy.

Second, the professor said Brachiosaurus could easily feed on land plants and thus did not depend on water plants as the passage argued. **Anatomically**（身体结构上） similar to a giraffe, it had relatively long front legs, which allowed it to extend its neck upward with less effort. Moreover, even if it could only reach out its neck horizontally, there were plenty of plants at its body height. What's more, its long neck allowed it to cover a large surface area so it could easily **devour**（吞食） a large quantity of food without having to move much.

Third, the professor **dismissed the argument in the passage**（不接受阅读短文中的论点） that Brachiosaurus lay submerged in water and used its nostrils to breathe. She cited the evidence of bone fossils indicating that these dinosaurs had narrow feet which were unfit for life in water. For a large animal to live in the lakes or swamps, the professor believed it needed to have broad feet like those of a hippopotamus to walk on the muddy bottom.

万用写作模板

许多主题为物理科学的综合写作题会涉及讨论远古时期一些现象的学科，如地质学、自然地理学和古生物学。针对这些话题，阅读短文通常会提出一种观点解释某一现象，然后讲座提出另一种观点。两种观点都提出各自的“证据”。下面的万用写作模板就是针对这类写作题设计的。

针对证据类题目的万用写作模板：

In the lecture, the professor talked about _____. Disputing the passage's arguments that _____, she cited several pieces of evidence showing that _____.

First, she said there was _____ evidence of _____. The evidence shows that _____. This evidence contradicts the claim in the passage that _____.

Second, the professor said _____ and thus did not _____ as the passage argued. ... Moreover, _____. What's more, _____.

Third, the professor dismissed the argument in the passage that _____. She cited the evidence of _____ indicating that _____.

事实上，不仅是物理科学，其他学术语境的作文也可以套用这个模板。例如，社会科

学领域讨论古文明、考古学及古人类学相关证据的题目，就可以用这个模板进行写作。

建立自己的写作句型库

考试前要多阅读、多听和多说，在阅读英文文章、听英文材料和说英文的过程中训练英语思维能力。这需要花很多时间，但是效果肯定是最好的。

另一种训练英语思维的方法是：熟记本书中的实用句型和语块。这是短时间内提升英语思维能力的最佳方法。

综合写作题中遇到涉及物理科学的题目时，下面的句型都可以用上。现在，让我们开始熟记这些实用句型吧。

- 阅读好句型成为我的作文佳句

Because x was..., scientists believe it was probably... 因为.....，科学家们相信.....是可能的

Because the animal limited by its huge size and shape, scientists believe it was probably confined to a water habitat.

拓展 Because the large dinosaur would have been unable to move on land, scientists believe it was probably an aquatic species.

For one thing, on land x would have been unable to VERB... 首先，陆地生活无法完成.....

For one thing, on land the short legs of Brachiosaurus would have been unable to support such a large mass.

拓展 For one thing, on land Brachiosaurus would have been unable to go from lying down to a standing position.

Second, it is unlikely that x could have VERBed... due to x 其次，因为.....的原因，它不可能.....

Second, it is unlikely that Brachiosaurus could have lifted its neck to reach tree leaves on land due to the weight of its head and long neck.

拓展 Second, it is unlikely that Brachiosaurus could have got enough to eat from land trees due to its heavy neck.

Finally, because..., x could have VERBed 最后，因为.....，它本可以.....

Finally, because its nostrils are located at the top of its head, the Brachiosaurus could have spent much of the time mostly submerged in deep lake waters.

拓展 Finally, because Brachiosaurus was often under water, it could have breathed through its nostrils.

- 讲座好句型成为我的作文佳句

But these x were without a doubt able to VERB 但是，毫无疑问，.....能够.....

But these dinosaurs were without a doubt able to walk on dry land.

拓展 But these animals were without a doubt able to live on land.

When we look at all the evidence, we can see that... 当审视所有证据，我们会发

现.....

When we look at all the evidence, we can see that they were not aquatic dwellers.

改述 When we look at all the evidence, we can see that Brachiosaurus lived near water, not in water.

First, let's take the argument that x would be unable to VERB because... 首先，我们分析一下该论点.....

First, let's take the argument that Brachiosaurus would be unable to stand on land because its legs would not have supported its weight.

改述 First, let's take the argument that Brachiosaurus would be unable to walk around on land because its legs were too weak.

Second, because of x, a Brachiosaurus could have VERBed 其次，由于.....，腕龙会.....

Second, because of its small, light head and long forefeet, a Brachiosaurus could have lifted its neck.

拓展 Second, because of its proportionately small head, a Brachiosaurus could have lifted it up to reach trees.

- 高分范文佳句

In the lecture, the professor talked about x 教授在讲座中谈论了.....

In the lecture, the professor talked about Brachiosaurus' habitat.

改述 In the lecture, the professor talked about where Brachiosaurus probably lived.

Disputing the passage's arguments that..., she cited several pieces of evidence showing that... 为反驳文章中的.....观点，她举出若干证据，证明.....

Disputing the passage's arguments that this particular dinosaur lived in water, she cited several pieces of evidence showing that it lived near water.

改述 Disputing the passage's arguments that Brachiosaurus was aquatic, she cited several pieces of evidence showing that it was **terrestrial**（陆地的）.

First, she said there was x evidence of y 首先，她说有.....的证据

First, she said there was fossil evidence of Brachiosaurus' footprints on land.

改述 First, she said there was clear evidence of Brachiosaurus' tracks on land.

Second, the professor said x could easily VERB and thus did not VERB as the passage argued. 其次，教授说.....会轻易.....因而不会如文中所说那般.....

Second, the professor said Brachiosaurus could easily feed on land plants and thus did not depend on water plants as the passage argued.

改述 Second, the professor said Brachiosaurus could easily reach land plants and thus did not need to eat aquatic plants as the passage argued.

Third, the professor dismissed the argument in the passage that... 第三，教授不接受阅读短文中.....论点

Third, the professor dismissed the argument in the passage that Brachiosaurus lay submerged in

water and used its nostrils to breathe.

改述 Third, the professor dismissed the argument in the passage that Brachiosaurus spent a lot of time under water.

语块

dinosaurs	恐龙
aquatic	水生的
sauropod	蜥脚龙
the Jurassic Period	侏罗纪
Brachiosaurus	腕龙
nostrils	鼻孔
equivalent of	与.....相当
be submerged in	潜入.....以下
extend (number + measure word)	伸展到（数字＋量词）
snorkels	（潜水者使用的）通气管
counterbalance	平衡（力）
aquatic dwellers	水栖动植物
be limited by	受限于.....
Let's take the argument that...	让我们分析一下该论点.....
be confined to	限定在（一定范围以内）
fossil tracks	化石足迹
habitat	（动植物的）栖息地
herd	兽群
frame	身体；体型
stance	站姿
collapse	塌陷
parallel to	与.....相同；与.....同时
crushed by	被.....压碎
horizontal reach	水平可达距离
buoyancy	浮力
sweep x from side to side	将.....从一端移到另一端
swamps	沼泽
swallow whole	整个吞下
survive by VERBing	通过.....而活下来
wade about	在水中四处蹿

Exercise 2

学习了以上这些策略、实用句型、语块、高分范文和万用写作模板之后，返回去看例

题。再读一遍阅读短文，然后再听一遍讲座。如果还是听不懂讲座内容，就反复多听几遍，或者参考录音原稿。然后修改你之前写的作文，或者重新写一篇作文。修改或重写作文时，试着运用本章学到的写作技巧。完成之后，比较一下修改或重写前后的两篇作文，注意不同之处。

录音原稿

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

(woman) Professor: Of course, dinosaurs like the Brachiosaurus would have spent considerable time near water—feeding and drinking near the many swamps and lakes that existed in the Jurassic Period. But these dinosaurs were without a doubt able to walk on dry land. When we look at all the evidence, we can see that they were not aquatic dwellers.

First, let's take the argument that Brachiosaurus would be unable to stand on land because its legs would not have supported its weight. We know Brachiosaurus walked on land on all four legs because many fossil tracks have been found, indicating groups of Brachiosaurus walking together. In fact, scientists have even found track evidence that some sauropod babies could run on two feet alongside the herd.

Second, because of its small, light head and long forefeet, a Brachiosaurus could have lifted its neck. With long front legs and shorter hind legs, its stance was similar to that of a giraffe, and that posture gave it some advantages. At the very minimum, it could raise its neck up parallel to its body, so that it reached the branches of conifers and other trees at that height. Moreover, because the Brachiosaurus had great horizontal reach on land, it could sweep its head from side to side, swallowing whole great quantities of ferns and other terrestrial plants.

Finally, the Brachiosaurus could not have lived in water. From bone fossils we know that its feet and limbs were too narrow to allow it to stand very long in mud. Animals that spend considerable time in muddy waters have short legs and broad, flat feet, which allow them to wade about in swamps without sinking down too far. Water-dwelling hippopotamus and elephants, for example, have these broad, flat feet—very different from Brachiosaurus.

2 Humanities and the Arts—Music History

人文艺术常考主题1：音乐史

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何记笔记才能抓住阅读短文和听力材料中的要点
- 解读常考题

在新托福写作部分，与人文艺术相关的题目覆盖很多领域，包括建筑和设计、艺术作品、艺术史、纺织和纺织工艺、音乐和音乐史以及舞蹈。人文艺术领域的其他学科还包括摄影、新闻、文学（包括小说、诗歌、戏剧以及艺术中的一些“主义”，如浪漫主义和现代主义）以及美国史和世界史。

下面是一道关于人文艺术的写作题例子，请阅读题目并完成练习。

苏珊举例

Narrator: This section measures writing to communicate in an academic environment. There are two writing tasks.

For Writing Task 1, the integrated writing task, you will read a short passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question. For Writing Task 2, the independent writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now listen to the directions for Writing Task 1.

For Writing Task 1, you will have three minutes to read a short academic passage. You may take notes. The passage will be removed and you will listen to a lecture about the same topic. Again, you may take notes.

You will have 20 minutes to write a response about the relationship between the lecture and the reading. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. Do not give your personal opinion. You will be able to see the reading passage again. You may use your notes.

An effective response will be 150 to 225 words. You will be rated on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content. If you finish your response before time is up, you may go on to Writing Task 2.

Begin reading now.

In 1822, at the age of 25, Austrian composer Franz Schubert began to work on a symphony in B Minor, his 8th Symphony. Because Schubert did not write the full four movements normally required

for a Classical symphony, the two movements which he did write are now referred to as his "Unfinished" Symphony. The composition is now the most famous and popular of all his instrumental work. Schubert, though young, was already a brilliant and careful composer. There are good reasons to believe that he did not consider this work "incomplete" and intended it to have only two movements.

For one thing, there was precedent for two-movement works in the 19th century. Schubert's hero, Beethoven, had written four piano sonatas with only two movements. Beethoven had also created new forms of symphonies. Like Beethoven, Schubert was searching for an artistic form that would allow his symphony to transcend the Classical models.

Music historians also maintain that Schubert was content with two movements because both movements are written in the same meter; that is to say, three beats to a measure. The first movement is in three-fourths time and the second movement is in three-eighths time. It would be difficult for Schubert to write a third movement because the third movement in most symphonies was usually written in three-fourths time. Three consecutive movements in the same meter would not likely be acceptable to composers or audiences.

Finally, Schubert most likely intentionally left the composition at two movements because he thought the music was perfect as it was. The themes were fully developed and the orchestration was complete. There was nothing he could add to the piece that would add value. And in fact, the Eighth Symphony, in its two-movement form, is often performed by orchestras over the world and regarded as emotionally and structurally satisfying.

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.
[Play Track 2. The transcript is found at the end of this chapter.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture you just heard, being sure to explain how they respond to the specific points made in the reading passage.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

Exercise 1

根据阅读短文和讲座，完成上面这道作文题。写完作文后，继续学习下一部分内容，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

★ 赋能技能 综合写作题如何记笔记

1 · 综合写作题记笔记的三个简单步骤

1) 阅读时尽快找到论点。这就意味着必须理解文中的核心概念，并找出分论点。

2) 最好运用表格的形式（见下表）做笔记，因为表格会让你的思路富有条理。不一定要画很漂亮的表格，只要在纸上画出横线和竖线，出现八个空格即可。考前练习一段时间后，这种方法会让文章结构很自然。

3) 仔细阅读题目要求后开始写作文，按照上面的两个步骤把讲座的观点有条理地列出来。

2· 如何记笔记

由于题目要求考生谈论讲座中的要点与阅读短文中的要点之间的联系，因此通过笔记将这些观点组织起来对写作是很有帮助的。下面的表格展示了获取阅读短文和讲座中两种论点的方法，通过这个表格的学习，考生可以很容易地记录要点。

综合写作题的记笔记方法

要点	材料	阅读短文	讲座
论点 (Thesis)			
分论点 1 (Point 1)			
分论点 2 (Point 2)			
分论点 3 (Point 3)			

论点一般出现在阅读短文的第一段。例如，文章的论点是“一幅古老而难以辨认的绘画可能是简·奥斯汀的画像”，那么接下来的三段就会列举作此推测的原因。考生可以快速做笔记抓住这一信息。

在讲座中，教授会表达自己对阅读短文论点的看法。教授通常会对论点提出质疑。考生要认真听讲座的前几句话以确定教授的立场。然后教授会对阅读短文中的分论点逐一进行反驳。考生要把这些反驳的分论点记录在表格上“讲座”这一栏。例如在上面的例子中，教授可能会说简·奥斯汀家族里有很多人，这幅画也许是她某个亲戚的画像。

下面是上面关于舒伯特这道例题的笔记：

要点	材料	阅读短文	讲座
论点		S thought Symph complete (2 movts)	No, S would have liked 4 movts
分论点 1		Precedent for 2 movts symph	Yes, S was pushing boundary, but 8th Symph was written in Classical times
分论点 2		Both movts wrtten in same meter (3/4)	In fact, they found a 3rd movement in 3/4 time
分论点 3		S thought it perfect as it was	The 3rd and 4th draft movts were mediocre, not at all perfect

显然，讲座中的每个分论点记录得越详细越好。但是没必要详细记录阅读短文，因为写作时阅读短文会显示在屏幕上。写作文时，考生只须顺着“分论点”栏一个接一个地详述就

可以了。如此一来，这张表格就相当于写作提纲。

● 综合写作题的记笔记策略：

- 1· 带着抓核心概念、论点和分论点的目的去阅读短文。
- 2· 做表格形式的笔记。阅读部分，可以用缩写形式简单记录三个分论点。而讲座部分，尽量捕捉三个分论点的细节，为了节省时间，同样可以使用缩写形式。
- 3· 听讲座时，注意听关于分论点的指示性词语。例如，当听到“**It's doubtful that...**”时，要意识到教授将提出一个反驳阅读短文中分论点的论点。
- 4· 本书列举了阅读短文和讲座中常用的实用句型。记住这些句型，进入考场后要充分利用这些指示性词语，提醒自己什么时候该做笔记。
- 5· 做笔记时要放松。讲座的结构和上下文是可以预测的。教授在介绍或说明每一个分论点时，做好准备把每一点都记录下来。

高分范文

The professor talks about the controversy surrounding Schubert's masterpiece, the Eighth Symphony. Some people, including the author of the passage, think the two-movement symphony that we have today was exactly what Schubert intended. Other people, like the professor, believe Schubert hoped to write a four-movement piece but was not able to complete it.

First, the professor disputes the reading's point that Schubert created two movements because he was trying to break out of the Classical mold. He points out that the Eighth Symphony was written at the end of the Classical period and thus followed Classical practices in terms of symphony structure. There is no reason to believe he wanted to **deviate from** (偏离) the norm of four movements.

The professor also **takes exception to** (反对，不同意) the argument regarding consecutive movements in the same meter, suggesting that Schubert would only write two movements in the same meter. The professor **rebutts this point** (反驳这个观点) by citing that old manuscripts have been found, proving that Schubert attempted to write a third, and even a fourth, movement.

Third, the professor thinks Schubert was simply not comfortable with the work as a whole, for some reason. This view contradicts the reading, which maintains that because the two-movement "Unfinished Symphony" is now a favorite with audiences worldwide, Schubert must have been happy with his work. The professor again refers to the evidence of the rather ordinary third movement that exists and the missing pages, **making the case that** (提出理由证明.....) Schubert was not happy with the symphony. He probably tried to write the remaining movements, but eventually gave up.

万用写作模板

描述艺术家、音乐家或剧作家的想法时，可以运用下面的万用写作模板。

The professor talks about the controversy surrounding _____.
First, the professor disputes the reading's point that _____ because _____
[he/she] was trying to _____. There is no reason to believe _____

[he/she]_____.

The professor also takes exception to the argument regarding _____, suggesting that _____.

The professor rebuts this point by citing that _____, proving that _____.

Third, the professor thinks _____. This view contradicts the reading, which maintains that because _____, [[he/she] must have been _____. The professor again refers to the evidence _____, making the case that _____.

建立自己的写作句型库

写人文艺术方面话题的作文时，以下句型都可以用上。

- 阅读好句型成为我的作文佳句

There are good reasons to believe that x did not consider this work y and intended it to VERB 有充分的理由认为.....

There are good reasons to believe that he did not consider this work "incomplete" and intended it to have only two movements.

改述 There are good reasons to believe that the artist did not consider this work unfinished and intended it to be destroyed.

X also maintain that y was / were... because... 某人也认为.....

Music historians also maintain that Schubert was content with two movements because both movements are written in the same meter; that is to say, three beats to a measure.

拓展 Experts also maintain that works by Picasso are popular targets for art thieves because of their immense monetary value.

Finally, x most likely intentionally VERBed because... 最后，某人极有可能.....

Finally, Schubert most likely intentionally left the composition at two movements because he thought the music was perfect as it was.

拓展 Finally, Plato most likely wrote down the thoughts of Socrates because Socrates was no longer alive to record them.

- 讲座好句型成为我的作文佳句

We can assume that x would have VERBed 我们可以假设.....

We can assume that Schubert would have liked to complete all four movements.

改述 We can assume that Schubert would have written four movements had he lived longer.

It's true that in the x century y VERBed 确实.....

It's true that in the early 19th century some musical compositions had only two movements.

拓展 It's true that in the 1800s composers began to explore new musical forms.

What about x's use of y? 某物起什么作用？

What about Schubert's use of the same meter in the first two movements?

拓展 What about Schubert's missing manuscript?

Third, it's doubtful that... 第三，.....很可疑

Third, it's doubtful that Schubert thought the composition was "perfect" as it was.

拓展 Third, it's doubtful that Schubert would have published a three-movement symphony at that time.

- 高分范文佳句

The professor talks about the controversy surrounding x 该教授谈论了围绕.....存在的争议

The professor talks about the controversy surrounding Schubert's masterpiece, the Eighth Symphony.

改述 The professor talks about the controversy surrounding the Unfinished Symphony.

First, the professor disputes the reading's point that x VERBed because x was trying to VERB 首先，该教授对阅读中的.....论点表示了异议

First, the professor disputes the reading's point that Schubert created two movements because he was trying to break out of the Classical mold.

改述 First, the professor disputes the reading's point that the composer wrote a new kind of symphony because he was trying to revolutionize music.

There is no reason to believe... 没有理由去相信.....

There is no reason to believe he wanted to deviate from the norm of four movements.

改述 There is no reason to believe Schubert would use a radically different musical structure.

The professor also takes exception to the argument regarding x, suggesting that... 该教授也不同意关于.....的论点，认为.....

The professor also takes exception to the argument regarding consecutive movements in the same meter, suggesting that Schubert would only write two movements in the same meter.

改述 The professor also takes exception to the argument regarding movements in the same musical meter, suggesting that there were only supposed to be two movements.

The professor rebuts this point by citing that..., proving that... 该教授以.....来反驳该论点，证实.....

The professor rebuts this point by citing that old manuscripts have been found, proving that Schubert attempted to write a third, and even a fourth, movement.

改述 The professor rebuts this point by citing that pages of old music have been found, proving that Schubert actually tried to write more than two movements.

This view contradicts the reading, which maintains that because..., x must have... 该观点与阅读短文的观点相矛盾，阅读短文的观点认为.....

This view contradicts the reading, which maintains that because the two-movement "Unfinished Symphony" is now a favorite with audiences worldwide, Schubert must have been happy with his work.

改述 This view contradicts the reading, which maintains that because the two-movement

work is very popular, Schubert must have considered it a great symphony.

The professor again refers to the evidence of x, making the case that... 该教授又引用了.....的证据，提出理由证明.....

The professor again refers to the evidence of the rather ordinary third movement that exists and the missing pages, making the case that Schubert was not happy with the symphony.

改述 The professor again refers to the evidence of the piano version of the third movement and torn manuscript pages, making the case that Schubert had wanted to finish the symphony.

语块

composer	作曲家
measure	小节
Franz Schubert	弗朗茨·舒伯特
three-fourths time	3/4拍
symphony	交响乐
three-eighths time	3/8拍
in B Minor	B小调
consecutive	连贯的；不间断的
movements	乐章
as it was	按原状
Unfinished Symphony	《未完成的交响曲》（特指舒伯特《第八交响曲》）
themes	主旋律
composition	音乐作品
orchestration	管弦乐编曲
instrumental work	器乐作品
masterful	精湛的
precedent	前例，先例
it's no coincidence that...并非偶然
Beethoven	贝多芬
pushing the boundaries of...	对.....进行突破；促进.....的进步
sonatas	奏鸣曲
Classical heritage	古典主义的传承
transcend	超越
in a row	连续
be content with...	对.....满意
torn out of...	从.....扯出
meter	韵律
it's doubtful that...是值得怀疑的
beats	节拍
mediocre	平庸的，普通的

Exercise 2

学习了以上这些策略、实用句型、语块、高分范文和万用写作模板之后，返回去看例题。再读一遍阅读短文，然后再听一遍讲座。如果还是听不懂讲座内容，就反复多听几遍，或者参考录音原稿。然后修改你之前写的作文，或者重新写一篇作文。修改或重写作文时，试着运用本章学到的写作技巧。完成之后，比较一下修改或重写前后的两篇作文，注意不同之处。

录音原稿

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

(man) Professor: As masterful as Schubert's Eighth Symphony is, the fact remains that instead of the four movements required of Classical symphonies, it has only two. And it's no coincidence that this work is called the "Unfinished" Symphony. We can assume that Schubert would have liked to complete all four movements. Let's look at the points mentioned in the reading, one by one.

First, the issue of two-movement works. It's true that in the early 19th century some musical compositions had only two movements. It is also true that Schubert was pushing the boundaries of symphonies, especially by writing musical themes with great emotional power. But remember that the Eighth Symphony was written at the end of the Classical period. The structure of Schubert's symphonies reflects this Classical heritage. This means that, for Schubert, a symphony would always have four movements.

What about Schubert's use of the same meter in the first two movements? Yes, symphonies are not supposed to have three movements in a row with the same meter. What is interesting is that Schubert did in fact try to write a third movement to his Eighth Symphony, in the same meter. Music historians discovered an early version, most of which contained only piano music. At the end, pages appear to have been torn out of the music. These missing pages may have been the fourth movement of his symphony.

Third, it's doubtful that Schubert thought the composition was "perfect" as it was. As I mentioned, it's clear that he was having trouble with his third movement. The version that does exist is considered rather mediocre by music historians. Schubert probably never revised the third and fourth movements; he disliked making small changes to his scores. He sent the unfinished Eighth Symphony to a friend, who kept it secretly for forty years.

3 Life Sciences—Zoology

生命科学常考主题1：动物学

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 提高预测讲座中教授观点的能力
- 解读常考题

综合写作题中涉及动植物话题的题占很大的比例。除了动植物话题之外，还会涉及生态学、微观生物学和公共健康。在典型的生命科学写作题里，如果阅读短文讨论的是有袋类动物向低级进化，那么讲座就会反驳此说法，认为有袋类动物向高级进化。

由于动植物的生命形式多样，名称和行为各异，所以有些考生觉得生命科学主题的讲座很难，词汇量非常大。尽管原理和定义不会太专业——如果材料的语言是自己的母语就根本没有丝毫难度——但是英语为非母语的人听生命科学的术语确实有很大的难度。不过不要担心，许多词汇会出现在阅读短文中，其他词汇则可根据上下文来猜测。

下面请看一道关于生命科学的例子。阅读题目然后完成Exercise 1。

苏珊举例

Narrator: This section measures writing to communicate in an academic environment. There are two writing tasks.

For Writing Task 1, the integrated writing task, you will read a short passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question. For Writing Task 2, the independent writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now listen to the directions for Writing Task 1.

For Writing Task 1, you will have three minutes to read a short academic passage. You may take notes. The passage will be removed and you will listen to a lecture about the same topic. Again, you may take notes.

You will have 20 minutes to write a response about the relationship between the lecture and the reading. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. Do not give your personal opinion. You will be able to see the reading passage again. You may use your notes.

An effective response will be 150 to 225 words. You will be rated on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content. If you finish your response before time is up, you may go on to Writing Task 2.

Begin reading now.

One of the more serious threats facing wildlife in North America is the future of bobwhite quails. Native to Mexico, the Caribbean and the US, these "New World" quails have declined dramatically in number. In fact, in the past 40 years, the population of wild bobwhite quail has fallen 82 per cent. Recreational hunters and conservationists claim that actions need to be taken to reverse this trend.

First, because so much land is taken up by crops and agriculture, it is necessary for each farmer to create a small area of native plants dedicated to quail. Successful quail habitat management requires meeting all the quail's needs in these small areas.

Next, hunters must stop "over-hunting." The bobwhite's popularity as a game bird has led to excessive hunting, causing a decline in quail populations. By shortening the hunting season to two months in some areas, and by completely banning hunting in areas where quail have disappeared, quail will have the opportunity to reproduce and build in number.

Finally, we need to encourage individuals to breed large numbers of bobwhite quail and release them into the wild. For example, growers can buy quail eggs and raise them. Alternatively, growers can buy a breeding pair of adult quail. Young quail grow quickly and are ready for release at 16 weeks. By artificially restocking quail populations through the release of penraised birds, hunting and conservation interests will benefit.

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.
[Play Track 3. The transcript is found at the end of this chapter.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture you just heard, explaining how they cast doubt on the specific solutions presented in the reading.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

Exercise 1

根据阅读短文和讲座，完成上面这道作文题。写完作文后，继续学习下一部分内容，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

★ 赋能技能 预测下文：预测讲座内容和观点

综合写作题的难点在于理解教授的讲座内容和其观点。对于英语为非母语的学习者而言，教授的语速非常快。不管讲座内容是否熟悉，英语术语一闪即逝。
听力语速很快，考生应如何应对？
如果考生能训练自己预测下文的能力，那么捕捉讲座的要点就会容易得多。

那么如何预测讲座内容和教授的观点呢？

预测讲座内容时，利用以下几点：

- 1· 结构和逻辑顺序
- 2· 指示性词语
- 3· 外延含义（主题之外的知识）

1· 结构和逻辑顺序

综合写作题的讲座结构大多可以预测。讲座第一段通常是介绍性的段落，观点鲜明，对概念、现象或要描述的事件作简单的介绍。接下来的段落包含三个分论点。考生可以明显感觉到讲座中的分论点是针对阅读短文中分论点的具体回应。通常情况下，讲座会反驳阅读中的观点。如果考生漏听了一两个词，要充分利用这种“可预测性”来预测甚至猜测下文内容。此外，正如上章所讲，通过制作笔记表格也可以很快抓住讲座的结构。

2· 指示性词语

讲座第一段经常会有一个表示部分赞同阅读短文论点的陈述，但是接下来会反驳其论证的某些方面。逻辑上的指示性词语包括下面句子中的下划线词语：

Solar energy may appear（看起来可能）to be easy to implement, but actually（事实上）it is quite problematic.

另有例子：

The reading is correct in pointing out that there are some benefits associated with micro credit. However（然而），the reading neglects to mention the serious problems that occur.

考生从这些指示性词语便可知道，接下来要开始反驳阅读短文的观点了。

指示性词语最明显的用法是表示顺序，即教授将first，second，third或lastly置于每段段首引出三个分论点。然而并不是所有教授都通过这种形式来陈述自己的观点。有时候，教授可能用To begin with...来开始陈述第一个分论点。而对于第二个和第三个分论点，教授可能会用And regarding the issue of x，...或者X is also a problem with...。因此考生需要了解各种表示顺序的词汇及短语，以提醒自己接下来就是一个反驳性分论点。

还有一些讲座中经常用到的指示性词语是和短文中概念的性质相关的实义词，诸如benefits，advantages，drawbacks，likelihood of success（或failure），以及用increases，decreases等表示未来趋势的词。如果你已掌握这些实义词，那么就能更好地理解上下文。例如，如果在讲座中听到：The steps proposed by the reading are likely to be unsuccessful and may even cause environmental damage.你就做好准备去听下面说这些步骤无效且有害的原因。

3· 外延含义（主题之外的知识）

对某个学术话题哪怕仅有一点背景知识，理解该话题也会相对容易一些。因此，考生应该充分利用自己的知识，结合阅读中的信息来预测教授即将说什么。

用自己已有的经验和对世界的认知来推断和预测讲座内容，这叫做“自上而下”的听力策略。运用这一策略可以更好地预测教授的观点（并猜测一些模糊性词语的意思）。这样一来记笔记就会容易很多，也有助于得高分。

现在你们已经了解了上面谈的这些方法，以后练习写作的时候就可以用上这些方法了。认真研读本书中的录音原稿，熟悉其结构和短语的用法。掌握好这些，相信你一定能提高综合写作题的分数！

- 正确预测讲座内容，可运用以下策略：
 - 1· 充分利用讲座结构的可预测性。认真听第一段核心概念的定义和论点，然后逐一听三个分论点。
 - 2· 运用表格记录核心概念、论点以及分论点。这有助于理解阅读和讲座的结构，并准确预测教授的观点。
 - 3· 注意听指示性词语和其他关键词。例如，注意听表达教授说话逻辑的指示性词语，像although和despite what many people say，通常后面会紧跟一个对比从句，如there is good reason to believe that...。这些暗示教授将比较讲座与阅读中的观点。
 - 4· 注意听表示顺序的指示性词语，如first，second和lastly。一旦听到这些词，就要集中注意力抓住每一个分论点的内容。
 - 5· 注意听可预测下文内容的实义词，如benefits和problems。这些词在阅读和讲座中都可能出现。但在讲座中听到的这些词会更有价值，因为它们暗示教授即将讲述的观点的性质。
 - 6· 用阅读短文中的事实和实义词在心里形成一个框架或纲要，这些事实和词汇会帮助你预测讲座中教授要说的内容。
 - 7· 运用自己的知识大胆猜测教授的讲话内容。事实上，你远比自己想象的要懂得多。如果讲座是关于农药，而这一话题可能你正好了解一些，那就尽量多想想用以描述农药的典型概念，包括其好处和潜在的危害等。
 - 8· 预测教授的讲话内容时，如果有一两个单词没听清，不要惊慌。只要好好运用上述策略，就一定会理解所听的话题；一些不熟悉的词汇不影响对全文的把握。

高分范文

The bobwhite quail has been under tremendous ecological pressure. In the past few decades, over four-fifths of the population has been killed. Suggestions for how to restore the quail numbers have been proposed, but there are differences in opinion. For example, in the lecture, the professor disagrees with the views expressed in the reading passage.

First, the professor disputes the effectiveness of the suggestion to **set aside**（留出） many small patches of land for the quails to live on. He believes isolated islands of land cannot duplicate the quail's natural environment. Instead, he thinks tracts of land connecting many regions need to be allotted for this purpose. Moreover, he believes these plots should be integrated with agricultural land.

Second, the professor contradicts the reading regarding the issue of hunting. In his mind, over-hunting is not the main factor leading to the dwindling of the quail's population. Not even a complete ban on hunting will solve the problem. He argues that bobwhite quail is a prolific species. As long as there are suitable habitats that meet quails' complex ecological requirements, they can quickly regain their numbers.

Third, he is against the idea of using farm-raised bobwhites to **replenish** (补充) the quail stock. He believes farm breeding will produce quail genes that weaken their abilities to adapt to the natural environment. Consequently, the farm-born quails will not survive in the wild. He thinks "trap and transfer" is a much better approach. By trapping bobwhites in areas with dense populations and moving them to a low density but suitable areas, we can increase their numbers while preserving the strong genes of the wild bobwhite.

万用写作模板

综合写作题大多是一个需要解决的问题。阅读短文提出一系列解决方法。讲座中教授会反驳这些解决方法，指出其缺陷。下面的万用写作模板适用于所有“解决问题”的文章。

〔开头第一句可以简单地陈述一下问题〕. Suggestions for how to _____ have been proposed, but there are differences in opinion. For example, in the lecture, the professor disagrees with the views expressed in the reading passage.

First, the professor disputes the effectiveness of the suggestion to _____.

Second, the professor contradicts the reading regarding the issue of _____. Not even _____ will solve the problem. He argues that _____.

Third, he is against the idea of _____.

建立自己的写作句型库

下面的实用句型适用于综合写作题中关于生命科学的题目。

- 阅读好句型成为我的作文佳句
- x claim that actions need to be taken to reverse this trend.**某人主张需要采取一些行动来扭转这一趋势。
Recreational hunters and conservationists claim that actions need to be taken to reverse this trend.
拓展 Policy makers claim that actions need to be taken to reverse this trend.
First, because..., it is necessary for y to VERB 首先，.....有必要.....
First, because so much land is taken up by crops and agriculture, it is necessary for each farmer to create a small area of native plants dedicated to quail.
拓展 First, because there are very few bushes on farms nowadays, it is necessary for people to plant areas of wild plants especially for quail.
- x has led to y, causing z**导致.....，从而引发.....
The bobwhite's popularity as a game bird has led to excessive hunting, causing a decline in quail populations.
拓展 Modern farming has led to fewer patches of wild grass, causing the number of quail to shrink.

- 讲座好句型成为我的作文佳句

Yet the steps proposed in the reading passage will not be effective in VERBing 但是，阅读短文中提议的措施在.....方面不会有成效

Yet the steps proposed in the reading passage will not be effective in increasing quail populations.

改述 Yet the steps proposed in the reading passage will not be effective in restoring quail populations.

First, people need to recognize that we... 首先，人们需要认识到.....

First, people need to recognize that we can't increase the quail population with little plots of land here and there.

改述 First, people need to recognize that we need to take action to save the bobwhite quail.

Second, x is not a major factor contributing to y 其次，.....不是促成.....的主要因素

Second, over-hunting is not a major factor contributing to the decline of quail populations.

拓展 Second, pollution is not a major factor contributing to the decrease in quail.

Finally, the proposal to VERB is a bad idea. 最后，.....的提议不是一个好主意。

Finally, the proposal to release pen-raised bobwhite quail into the wild is a bad idea.

拓展 Finally, the proposal to raise quail domestically is a bad idea.

- 高分范文佳句

Suggestions for how to VERB have been proposed, but there are differences in opinion.

有人已经提出.....的建议，但是人们对此有不同看法。

Suggestions for how to restore the quail numbers have been proposed, but there are differences in opinion.

拓展 Suggestions for how to provide new habitat for quail have been proposed, but there are differences in opinion.

For example, in the lecture, the professor disagrees with x in the reading passage. 例如，在讲座中，教授不赞同阅读短文中的.....

For example, in the lecture, the professor disagrees with the views expressed in the reading passage.

改述 For example, in the lecture, the professor disagrees with the opinions presented in the reading passage.

First, the professor disputes the effectiveness of the suggestion to VERB 首先，教授质疑.....建议的有效性

First, the professor disputes the effectiveness of the suggestion to set aside many small patches of land for the quails to live on.

拓展 First, the professor disputes the effectiveness of the suggestion to reserve small plots of farm land.

Second, the professor contradicts the reading regarding the issue of VERBing 其次，教授在关于.....的问题上与短文中的观点不一致

Second, the professor contradicts the reading regarding the issue of hunting.

拓展 Second, the professor contradicts the reading regarding the issue of quail reproduction.

Third, he is against the idea of VERBing 第三，他反对.....的想法

Third, he is against the idea of using farm-raised bobwhites to replenish the quail stock.

拓展 Third, he is against the idea of releasing domestic quail into the wild.

语块

-
- bobwhite quail** 美洲鹑
 - restocking (quail) populations** 补充（鹑的）数量
 - threats facing...** 对.....的威胁
 - pen-raised birds** 圈养的鸟
 - decline dramatically** 急剧下降
 - hunting enthusiasts** 狩猎爱好者
 - recreational hunters** 把打猎作为娱乐的狩猎者
 - boost (bobwhite quail populations)** （美洲鹑数量）激增
 - conservationists** （动植物）保护工作者
 - plots of land** 地块
 - reverse (this) trend** 扭转（这一）趋势
 - It hasn't worked.** 这不会有效果。
 - be taken up by...** 被.....占据
 - isolated islands of land** 隔离的几块土地
 - native plants** 土生土长的植物，本地生植物
 - hunting season** 狩猎季
 - dedicated to...** 专门为.....预留
 - prolific breeders** 繁殖力很高的动物
 - habitat management** 生境管理
 - timely access to...** 及时进入.....
 - over-hunting** 过度捕猎
 - nesting habitats** 筑巢之地
 - popularity as a(n)...** 作为.....广受欢迎
 - genetic DNA** 遗传基因
 - game bird** 猎鸟；供捕猎的鸟
 - tends to be (inferior)** 往往是（低等）
 - banning hunting** 禁猎
 - inter-breeding** 变种间杂交
 - build in number** 数量增加
 - docile** 驯服的；温顺的
 - breed** 饲养；培育
 - have trouble (surviving)** 很难（幸存）

- release 释放
- trap and transfer 陷阱捕猎和转移
- a breeding pair of adult quail 育种配对的成年鹌鹑
- genetic integrity 遗传完整性

Exercise 2

学习了以上这些策略、实用句型、语块、高分范文和万用写作模板之后，返回去看例题。再读一遍阅读短文，然后再听一遍讲座。如果还是听不懂讲座内容，就反复多听几遍，或者参考录音原稿。然后修改你之前写的作文，或者重新写一篇作文。修改或重写作文时，试着运用本章学到的写作技巧。完成之后，比较一下修改或重写前后的两篇作文，注意不同之处。

录音原稿

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

(woman) Professor:Both hunting enthusiasts and biologists are searching for ways to boost bobwhite quail populations. It's not an easy task because bobwhite quail have complex habitat requirements, much more complex than most other animals. Yet the steps proposed in the reading passage will not be effective in increasing quail populations.

First, people need to recognize that we can't increase the quail population with little plots of land here and there. Rather, what is needed is a cooperative strategy that involves wildlife management across multiple regions. Professionals have been saying that creating small-scale plots on a farm will be enough, but it hasn't worked. The reason is that these isolated islands of land are not connected to one another. Biologists now realize we must have pieces of land that are connected to one another. The habitat areas must be managed across regional borders, integrated with pre-existing pieces of agricultural land.

Second, over-hunting is not a major factor contributing to the decline of quail populations. Even where the hunting season has been eliminated entirely, quail numbers have decreased. Quail are extremely prolific breeders—a single hen may lay a dozen eggs. But their life cycles are short—which makes it important for quail to have timely access to proper nesting habitats, where they can reproduce.

Finally, the proposal to release pen-raised bobwhite quail into the wild is a bad idea. Captive-bred bobwhites will seriously harm wild quail populations because their genetic DNA tends to be inferior, due to years of inter-breeding. Moreover, pen-raised quail often are docile and have trouble surviving in the wild. A better plan is to trap wild bobwhite quail in areas where they are abundant and then transfer them to areas of good habitat where quail are few. This "trap and transfer" approach

maintains the genetic integrity of the breeding population of the wild quails.

4 Social Sciences—Archaeology

社会科学常考主题1：考古学

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何运用连词使作文衔接自然
 - 学习“让步与反驳”的作文结构，让作文更有说服力
- 解读常考题

综合写作题中有很多关于社会科学的语境（在新托福考试的四个部分中，心理学和社会学是出现频率很高的主题）。社会科学的话题涉及人类学、考古学、商业和管理、通讯、教育和经济等。社会科学话题主要关注人类的行为，例如，工人就业问题。因此，经济学领域的作文题可能会谈论私营企业的投资有没有可能创造新的就业机会。

下面是一个社会科学方面的例子。看题目并完成Exercise 1。

苏珊举例

Narrator: This section measures writing to communicate in an academic environment. There are two writing tasks.

For Writing Task 1, the integrated writing task, you will read a short passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question. For Writing Task 2, the independent writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now listen to the directions for Writing Task 1.

For Writing Task 1, you will have three minutes to read a short academic passage. You may take notes. The passage will be removed and you will listen to a lecture about the same topic. Again, you may take notes.

You will have 20 minutes to write a response about the relationship between the lecture and the reading. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. Do not give your personal opinion. You will be able to see the reading passage again. You may use your notes.

An effective response will be 150 to 225 words. You will be rated on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content. If you finish your response before time is up, you may go on to Writing Task 2.

Begin reading now.

There has been much discussion about when our early human ancestors were first able to control fire on a regular basis. Many archaeologists believe that some 1.6 million years ago, the early human ancestors referred to as Hominins had control over fire when they emerged from Africa. These predecessors of modern human beings could walk on two feet and were always on the move. They were hunters and gatherers who could use simple stone tools. We can logically assume that the Homo erectus species—the name we often give the first upright Hominins—had control of fire when they arrived in Europe. There are several reasons for this thinking.

First, because we know the Homo erectus species colonizing Europe had rapidly evolving bodies and relatively large brains, they would have required a steady source of energy. Heat greatly increases the nutritional quality of food. Cooked foods are more efficiently digested and boost metabolic energy. In cold climates, the consumption of raw foods would have been an insufficient source of energy to fuel the growth and evolution of Homo erectus that took place.

Also, archaeologists have discovered traces of fireplaces and burned materials in many excavations in Europe. Although the nomadic Homo erectus did not take time to build formal hearths, the clusters of burnt materials that have been found indicate that heating took place. For example, there are reddened sediments (showing iron oxidation), charred bone fragments and small pieces of charcoal.

Moreover, we know that during this time the temperatures in Europe routinely dropped below freezing. It would have been impossible for Homo erectus to survive in the northern latitudes of Europe during the Ice Age without relying on fire to stay warm, especially during the coldest periods of winter.

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

[Play Track 4. The transcript is found at the end of this chapter.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture you just heard, being sure to explain how they respond to the specific arguments made in the reading passage.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

Exercise 1

根据阅读短文和讲座，完成上面这道作文题。写完作文后，继续学习下一部分内容，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

★ **PCC PCC学习方法** 连词的衔接

仅仅熟练掌握词汇和语法还远远不够，考生还需要具备一种能够准确地组词成句和组

句成段的能力。这正是PCC PCC学习方法中的第三个C，代表“衔接”的COHESION如此重要的原因。很多情况下衔接就像胶水一样将单词和短语连接在一起。衔接自然的作文能够让评分者轻松读懂文章的逻辑。一旦考生在新托福考试的作文中能够做到衔接自然，评分者就会注意到这一点并顺理成章打出高分。此外，衔接自然的文章自然会连贯流畅（也就是PCC PCC学习方法中的最后一个C）。文章观点统一也是一种连贯，做到这一点，文章的分数就能从3分上升到4分。

根据ETS评分准则，综合作文题若想得到4分，作文必须连贯而准确地传达了讲座的要点。若只拿到3分，这种作文一般是模糊、笼统且不太准确地表达了讲座观点与阅读观点的联系。由此可见，衔接自然的作文拿4分的可能性就会增大。因此，下面就教给大家怎样做到衔接自然和前后连贯。

有很多方法可以使作文前后更连贯。本章主要通过连词这一手法，第14章会具体介绍如何使用指示词使上下文衔接自然。

连词的用法很多。连词既可以连接句内的短语和分句，也可以连接两个独立的句子。连词种类繁多，下面的表格列举了一些写作中常用的连词和连接副词。并列连词

并列连词	从属连词	连接副词
and	although	as a result
but	because	consequently
for	even though	however
nor	if	moreover
or	unless	nevertheless
so	until	rather
yet	in order that	yet

用连词使上下文连贯需要注意以下两点：

1）复习连词位置的语法知识。学习不同连词的位置，判断它们是放在句中的不同地方还是放在独立分句之前。如：

Micro credit loans are in some ways inefficient; on the other hand, they can help entrepreneurs in remote villages.

Although micro credit loans are in some ways inefficient, they can help entrepreneurs in remote villages.

It's true that micro credit loans are in some ways inefficient. They can help entrepreneurs in remote villages, however.

2）选择连词时，除了语法外，还要考虑逻辑。例如，**moreover**表示要在原义的基础上增加一些信息；**however**表示要陈述与之前的观点相矛盾或相反的观点。如：

The passage says celebrity endorsements can grab the attention of consumers. Moreover, celebrity advertisements can be used to promote a wide variety of products and services.

The passage says celebrity endorsements can grab the attention of consumers. However, the professor asserts that consumers aren't really persuaded by this tactic.

- 运用连词做到上下文衔接自然的策略：
 - 1· 学习基本的几个连词的功能和用法，考试前练习写作时要学着运用。这对掌握衔接和连贯的技巧非常重要，且直接影响你的分数。
 - 2· 写作时不要在句子开头使用and作为连词。在一个句子开头用and会让评分者觉得考生的连词运用能力差，如：The professor said that consumer resistance to advertising had never been greater. And she also said that the consumers are aware that they are being manipulated.
 - 3· 不要忘记逻辑！衔接自然的文章其逻辑一定是连贯的。写作时注意观点间的逻辑。（关于逻辑连贯性的策略将在第16章详述。）
 - 4· 考试时不要只用连词这一单一手法来衔接。衔接和连贯都需要各种语言表达策略，包括使用指示性代词（如this project）、限定词（the team model），或者重复关键词。简而言之，写作需要连词，但不能只用连词这一种手段。

高分范文

Early humans knew how to use fire. But the question of just when they learned to control the use of fire is far from being settled. Examining the evidence left by the Homo erectus living in Europe, the writer of the reading passage believes it was 1.6 million years ago, while the professor thinks it was much later—about 400,000 years ago.

The professor **concurs**（同意） that cooking enhances the nutritional value of food, but he thinks early Hominins got enough nutrition through raw food. The professor cites fossil records of teeth which are well-suited for tearing and chewing. He implies they would not have had this kind of teeth unless they had to consume raw food.

Second, the professor disputes the dating of the charcoal and burnt bones. Referring to the fireplace evidence cited in the reading, the professor says the burnt materials were from a much later time. He says there is no archeological evidence of the control use of fire in Europe that goes back a million years. Homo erectus in Africa may have taken advantage of natural fires, but that does not mean they were able to create fire.

On the third point, about how the Homo erectus kept warm in the **frigid temperatures**（寒冷的温度） of the time, the professor does not believe fire played a role. Homo erectus were persistent and adaptable. Their hunting lifestyle kept them moving with herds of animals and they could use furs for clothing. He also says they could stay in natural shelters to keep warm.

万用写作模板

综合写作题的阅读短文有一个论点和几个分论点，然后讲座会反驳这些论点和分论点。有些教授反驳时，会先同意阅读短文中的一个观点，然后再反驳整体论断。这种“让步与反驳”的文章复杂但具有说服力，下面的模板可以用于这类文章。

〔用简短的一句话表示认同阅读短文的部分观点〕. But the question of _____ is far from being settled. Examining the evidence left by _____, the writer of the reading passage believes _____, while the professor thinks _____.

The professor concurs that _____, but he thinks _____.

Second, the professor disputes the _____ of _____. _____ may have _____, but that does not mean they were able to _____.

On the third point, about how _____, the professor does not believe _____ played a role.

建立自己的写作句型库

写社会科学方面话题的作文时，下面的句型都可以用上。

- 阅读好句型成为我的作文佳句

There has been much discussion about when... 关于.....有许多种讨论

There has been much discussion about when our early human ancestors were first able to control fire on a regular basis.

改述 There has been much discussion about when humans first used fire.

There are several reasons for this x 关于.....有很多原因

There are several reasons for this thinking.

改述 There are several reasons for this opinion.

First, because we know x..., they would have required y 首先，因为我们知道.....，所以他们可能需要.....

First, because we know the Homo erectus species colonizing Europe had rapidly evolving bodies and relatively large brains, they would have required a steady source of energy.

改述 First, because we know the Hominids of that time were involving increasingly large brains, they would have required good nutrition.

Although x did not VERB, y indicate(s) that heating took place 虽然.....没有.....，但是.....暗示.....

Although the nomadic Homo erectus did not take time to build formal hearths, the clusters of burnt materials that have been found indicate that heating took place.

改述 Although the European Hominins of that time did not settle in one place, pieces of charcoal indicate that heating took place.

Moreover, we know that during this time x VERBed 此外，我们知道在此期间.....

Moreover, we know that during this time the temperatures in Europe routinely dropped below freezing.

拓展 Moreover, we know that during this time the European climate was colder than it is today.

- 讲座好句型成为我的作文佳句

Research findings suggest that humans did not VERB until... 研究结果显示.....

Research findings suggest that humans did not control fire until much later, about 400,000 years

ago.

改述 Research findings suggest that humans did not learn to use fire until approximately 400,000 years ago.

What about the claim that x must have VERBed...?的说法怎么样呢？

What about the claim that Homo erectus must have eaten cooked food to have enough energy to evolve?

改述 What about the claim that early humans must have absorbed nutrients from cooked food?

And third, whereas it's true that..., x proved able to VERB 第三，但是.....确实是事实，.....证明.....

And third, whereas it's true that a million years ago temperatures in Europe dipped below freezing as glaciers advanced and retreated, the Homo erectus who colonized these parts proved able to survive without fire.

改述 And third, whereas it's true that it was extremely cold in Europe during the Ice Age, our early ancestors proved able to endure this cold without fire.

- 高分范文佳句

But the question of x is far from being settled. 但是关于.....的问题远没有解决。

But the question of just when they learned to control the use of fire is far from being settled.

改述 But the question of when our human ancestors actually gained control over fire is far from being settled.

Examining the evidence [left] by x, the writer of the reading passage believes..., while the professor thinks... 仔细研究.....证据，短文作者认为.....，而教授认为.....

Examining the evidence left by the Homo erectus living in Europe, the writer of the reading passage believes it was 1.6 million years ago, while the professor thinks it was much later—about 400,000 years ago.

改述 Examining the evidence left by the European Hominins, the writer of the reading passage believes fire was controlled almost 1.6 million years ago, while the professor thinks the actual date was closer to 400,000 years ago.

The professor concurs that..., but he thinks... 教授认同.....，但他认为.....

The professor concurs that cooking enhances the nutritional value of food, but he thinks early Hominins got enough nutrition through raw food.

Second, the professor disputes the x of y 其次，该教授质疑.....

Second, the professor disputes the dating of the charcoal and burnt bones.

拓展 Second, the professor disputes the passage's interpretations of the evidence.

x may have VERBed, but that does not mean they were able to VERB 也许.....，但是那不意味着.....（**may have done** 结构表示对过去发生的行为的推测）

Homo erectus in Africa may have taken advantage of natural fires, but that does not mean they were able to create fire.

改述 Early humans may have taken advantage of forest fires started by lightning, but that does

not mean they were able to build fires by themselves.

On the third point, about how x..., the professor does not believe y played a role. 第三，关于.....，该教授不相信.....

On the third point, about how the Homo erectus kept warm in the frigid temperatures of the time, the professor does not believe fire played a role.

改述 On the third point, about how early humans in Europe kept warm, the professor does not believe fire played a role.

语块

archaeologists	考古学家
bone fragments	骨片
Hominin	人类，古人类
charcoal	木炭
predecessors of...的祖先
northern latitudes	北纬
Homo erectus	直立人
Ice Age	冰川期
metabolic energy	维持新陈代谢的能量
energy efficient	节能的
consumption of...	吃，喝
crunchy	酥脆的
fuel (growth and evolution)	刺激（生长和进化）
geologic time	地质时期
traces of...的痕迹
domestic use	家用
fireplaces	生火之地
(lightning) struck	（雷）击
excavations	挖掘现场
(volcanoes) erupted	（火山）爆发
nomadic	游牧的
on a habitual basis	按照常规
hearths	生火之地
glaciers	冰川
clusters of...	一丛.....
tenacious	顽强的
sediments	沉积物
resilient	适应性强的
iron oxidation	铁的氧化
natural shelters	自然庇护所

charred 烧焦的
adapting to... 适应.....

Exercise 2

学习了以上这些策略、实用句型、语块、高分范文和万用写作模板之后，返回去看例题。再读一遍阅读短文，然后再听一遍讲座。如果还是听不懂讲座内容，就反复多听几遍，或者参考录音原稿。然后修改你之前写的作文，或者重新写一篇作文。修改或重写作文时，试着运用本章学到的写作技巧。完成之后，比较一下修改或重写前后的两篇作文，注意不同之处。

录音原稿

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

(man) Professor: Of course, our early human ancestors made use of natural fires in Africa, but they were not able to control the technology. There is simply no evidence in Europe that the early Hominins had regular control of fire almost two million years ago. Research findings suggest that humans did not control fire until much later, about 400,000 years ago.

What about the claim that Homo erectus must have eaten cooked food to have enough energy to evolve? To be sure, cooked food is more energy efficient for human bodies. However, even in cold climates, Homo erectus would have had an excellent source of meat and fish. And archaeologists who have analyzed fossils of teeth have found that Homo erectus munched on crunchy and tough foods, such as raw meat and root vegetables. The size and shape of their teeth were well suited for tearing and chewing meat, a source of protein that supports brain development.

As for fireplaces, no charcoal or charred bones have been found in European archaeological sites dating a million years back that can be linked to the controlled use of fire. The charcoal particles and burnt bones that have been found seem to be products of fires which occurred much later in geologic time. Furthermore, while our ancestors in Africa certainly made good domestic use of fire when lightning struck or when volcanoes erupted, they were unable to create fire on a habitual basis.

And third, whereas it's true that a million years ago temperatures in Europe dipped below freezing as glaciers advanced and retreated, the Homo erectus who colonized these parts proved able to survive without fire. How? They were tenacious and resilient. They followed herds of game and took advantage of natural shelters such as caves. Adapting to the cold, they used primitive tools to create warm clothing out of animal skins.

5 Physical Sciences—Energy

物理科学常考主题2：能源

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何运用本书的万用写作模板和高分范文写出个性化的作文
 - 如何清晰地陈述两方的观点
- 解读常考题

能源利用是新托福写作的热门话题。

下面是一个关于物理科学的例子。看题目并完成Exercise 1。

苏珊举例

Narrator: This section measures writing to communicate in an academic environment. There are two writing tasks.

For Writing Task 1, the integrated writing task, you will read a short passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question. For Writing Task 2, the independent writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now listen to the directions for Writing Task 1.

For Writing Task 1, you will have three minutes to read a short academic passage. You may take notes. The passage will be removed and you will listen to a lecture about the same topic. Again, you may take notes.

You will have 20 minutes to write a response about the relationship between the lecture and the reading. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. Do not give your personal opinion. You will be able to see the reading passage again. You may use your notes.

An effective response will be 150 to 225 words. You will be rated on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content. If you finish your response before time is up, you may go on to Writing Task 2.

Begin reading now.

Wind is a clean, renewable source of energy which holds much promise, and so private companies and governments have been actively exploring ways to commercially exploit wind power. Wind generators are currently operating in over 70 countries in the world, producing electrical

power for small-scale applications and large utility companies. Yet there are several problems with using wind power that may prove obstacles to widespread implementation of this resource in the future.

One of the main challenges that the energy developers face is the large amount of land that is required to support wind generators. A safety zone of 5 acres is necessary for each wind turbine. Moreover, because the wind must be free from dust and debris, trees within 30 feet of the turbines should be cleared away. In order to generate the electrical output equivalent to a conventional power plant, a wind power system requires hundreds of acres of land.

Another challenge for the new technology is that wind energy turbines destroy vast numbers of birds and bats every year. In one wind farm in California, for example, it is estimated that 10,000 birds—all protected by the migratory bird act—are killed every year. In addition, bat fatalities have been documented at high rates near wind projects. Endangered species of both birds and bats are at great risk from wind turbines, including the golden eagle.

Third, wind farms destroy the natural beauty of the land. The wind turbines and the many wires and poles that must be constructed to transmit electricity are not aesthetically pleasing. They cannot "blend" into the landscape. No homeowner wants to look at and listen to 200-meter towers, and homeowners should not have to worry about the value of their property. Furthermore, public property with open space and scenic views adds value to communities.

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.
[Play Track 5. The transcript is found at the end of this chapter.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they oppose the specific points made in the reading passage.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

Exercise 1

根据阅读短文和讲座，完成上面这道作文题。写完作文后，继续学习下一部分内容，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

★ **赋能技能** 宏观篇章技能：个性化的写作

评分者看过成千上万篇的作文，对于常用模板一眼就能看出来。而且ETS有专门的软件检测异常的语言雷同现象。如果评分者或ETS工作人员发现某篇作文可能是抄袭的，不能反映考生的真实能力，那么这篇文章很可能会被打低分，严重的甚至会被判零分。相反，如果能读到一篇描述情景和论据都与众不同的文章，评分者会非常开心。因为这让他们的工作变得不那么枯燥，而且他们喜欢了解新事物。不管是个人经历还是独特的论点，个性化

的文字会让评分者确信自己评估的是考生的真实能力。所以说，考生应尽量把作文写得富有个性化。

考生多背些高分范文以增强自信心的做法固然可取，但是怎样才能更好地使自己的文章有个人特征，让评分者觉得有趣、真实并给高分呢？

文章个性化的三个步骤

- 1) 根据题目判断语境或者语境框架，以确定使用什么模板，包括模板的结构和逻辑。
- 2) 在合适的模板中选择本书你已经熟记的实用句型。例如，对于综合写作题，**The professor disputes the claim that...**用于声称找到解决方案的作文是很好的方法。
- 3) 然后用自己的情况填充空白处。可以加一些自己的生活细节来支持自己的观点。例如：**The family meals my mother prepared were not fancy, but we sat down together every evening to eat.**（摘自第14章的高分范文）

现在请认真阅读本章后面关于风力发电的高分范文，研究它是怎么运用模板的。
第一句提到有一场关于风力发电的争论。考生通过陈述一个大家公认的事实做出总结，例如：**Wind power is a renewable energy source with great potential.**然后告诉读者有一场争论。换句话说，大家对于风力发电是好是坏持有不同的见解。

第二句解释各种意见是如何产生分歧的：风力发电的反对者（**opponents**）关注技术方面带来的问题，而支持者（**proponents**）对这些问题比较乐观。在这篇高分范文中，考生表示是科技带来了这些问题。另一个较好的陈述是：**Opponents focus on the problems that plague the technology...**（这些句子在“建立自己的写作句型库”里可以找到）。

第一段的最后一句指出阅读短文如何表达反对者的观点，而教授是如何表达相反观点来支持风力发电的。

考生可以记住这些实用句型，在综合写作题任何一篇作文的第一段都可以用它们来描述争论。然后，接下来三个段落的每段开头都可以用本章提供的实用句型来表达教授对阅读短文分论点的看法。写作时，可以在每个论点之后另加一两个句子。例如，在第二段，考生可以为该论点多提供一些细节。正如本章的高分范文，考生说教授同意风力发电需要大片土地这一观点，还提出问题的解决办法。

只要考生能正确理解讲座、记好笔记，那么写详细的句子也不是太难。对考生而言，最重要的是抓住三个分论点并在最后三段中对它们进行陈述。

现在请研究一下本章后面的高分范文，看看如何填充模板。由于这种写法会得到高分，所以你要记住“万用写作模板”和“建立自己的写作句型库”里的实用句型，让它们成为你的写作工具箱，用在你的个性化写作中。

● 个性化写作的策略：

- 1· 对于综合写作题，记住本书前八章的“万用写作模板”和“建立自己的写作句型库”里的实用句型。这些实用句型很重要，一定要熟练掌握。
- 2· 研究并记住前八章阅读和讲座里的实用句型，写作文时可以借用这些句型。请记住，在真正的新托福考试中，你要将阅读和讲座中的语言进行改述。如果直接从阅读甚至讲座中照搬太多词汇，评分者给你的分数会比较低。

3·独立写作题基本上可以用同样的方法：研究本书的高分范文和“万用写作模板”，记住“建立自己的写作句型库”里的实用句型。但是，要写出一篇具有个性化的作文，你还必须浏览所有的练习题并用英语列出自己的个性化内容。比如，题目问你喜欢什么，你要写下自己喜欢的东西并列出的原因。如果你业余时间喜欢呆在户外，那就要用英语写下你喜欢去的地方，并写出原因。不要逐字逐句照搬别人的文字，尝试原创。用这样的方式写下你喜欢的东西就像一场头脑风暴练习，帮你拿到最高分5分。

4·准备写作文时，有很多方法可以用上你准备的句型。可以从“建立自己的写作句型库”中选择几个句型，添加个性化内容，写出自己的句子；也可以把本书高分范文中的所有句子当实用句型使用，然后加入个性化的内容。当然你也可以根据本章介绍的原则和策略写出一篇全新的作文。

5·不管使用哪种方法，练习写作时最好用英语记下你自己的个性化内容，然后高声朗读，尽量记住。

高分范文

Wind power is a **renewable energy source** (可再生能源) with great potential, but it is surrounded by controversy. Opponents focus on **the problems that plague the technology** (困扰技术的问题), while proponents are optimistic about resolving the problems. The reading **sides with** (支持) the views of the opponents, and the professor is obviously a proponent.

First, the professor thinks the issue of land usage can be resolved. The reading talks about the large amount of land required by a wind power system. The professor does not dispute this fact, but she offers a way to solve the problem. She suggests placing wind power systems offshore or on top of mountains where they do not compete with other uses for land.

Second, the professor thinks bird and bat fatalities can be **ameliorated** (改善). She reminds us of the fact that any structure can potentially kill a flying animal. She then attributes the problem discussed in the reading to the old design of the fast-spinning turbine blade and the fact that some power systems are placed in the animals' fly zones or near their nesting grounds. She says the new design of slow-moving blades will not kill as many birds and bats.

Finally, on the issue of aesthetics, the professor argues that this problem can be avoided by placing power systems out of sight of most people. She says current technologies allow power systems to be located more than 12 miles offshore, implying people living on land will not be able to see them. Then she repeats the same suggestion she made for the solution to the land usage problem, i.e., that wind turbines should be placed on mountaintops where few people live.

万用写作模板

以下模板可以用于任何描述争议并明确提出支持者与反对者的意见的作文。争论型作文可能是关于诸如天文学等物理科学的，例如，支持者与反对者对月球是否由大爆炸形式的假设持不同观点。也可能关于其他学科，如社会科学的人类学，例如，有人称某种古文明消失于干旱，而有人则反对此说法。

_____ is [正面陈述]_____, but it is surrounded by controversy. Opponents focus

on the problems that _____, while proponents are optimistic about resolving the problems. The reading sides with the views of the _____, and the professor is obviously a _____.

First, the professor thinks the issue of _____ can be resolved. [用两三个句子来陈述]_____.

Second, the professor thinks [反面例子]_____ can be ameliorated. [用两三个句子来陈述]_____.

Finally, on the issue of _____, the professor argues that this problem can be avoided by _____.

建立自己的写作句型库

写物理科学方面话题的作文时，下面的句型都可以用上。

- 阅读好句型成为我的作文佳句

Yet there are several problems with VERBing that may prove obstacles to x in the future. 但是关于.....的问题可能会被证实是.....的障碍。

Yet there are several problems with using wind power that may prove obstacles to widespread implementation of this resource in the future.

改述 Yet there are several problems with designing wind turbines that may prove obstacles to successful operations in the future.

Another challenge for the new technology is that... 这种新科技的另一个难题是.....

Another challenge for the new technology is that wind energy turbines destroy vast numbers of birds and bats every year.

拓展 Another challenge for the new technology is that it is not yet economically practical.

Third, x destroy the natural beauty of y 第三，.....毁了.....的自然美

Third, wind farms destroy the natural beauty of the land.

拓展 Third, oil spills destroy the natural beauty of the coastline.

Furthermore, x adds value to y 而且，.....提升了.....的价值

Furthermore, public property with open space and scenic views adds value to communities.

拓展 Furthermore, clean energy adds value to the environment.

- 讲座好句型成为我的作文佳句

The reading is correct in saying that x is... 谈到.....时，短文的观点是正确的

The reading is correct in saying that wind power is being aggressively pursued as an alternative energy form with much potential.

改述 The reading is correct in saying that wind power is an alternative energy source that should be explored further.

Let's take a look at x and the challenge that brings. 我们来看看.....和它带来的难题。

Let's take a look at land usage and the challenge that brings.

拓展 Let's take a look at the loud noise produced by wind turbines and the challenge that brings.

For one thing, people should keep in mind that any x—including y and even z—can VERB 首先，人们必须记住.....

For one thing, people should keep in mind that any structure—including skyscrapers and even two-story homes—can kill birds when they fly into them.

拓展 For one thing, people should keep in mind that any generator—including those powered by gas and even oil—can harm wildlife.

As I mentioned earlier, in the future, x will be VERBed 正如我之前提到的，在未来.....

As I mentioned earlier, in the future, many wind generators will be placed out in the ocean.

拓展 As I mentioned earlier, in the future, many traditional sources of energy will be **depleted** (耗尽，枯竭) .

- 高分范文佳句

x is..., but it is surrounded by controversy.，但是围绕这一问题还存在争议。

Wind power is a renewable energy source with great potential, but it is surrounded by controversy.

拓展 Wind power is considered a clean energy, but it is surrounded by controversy.

Opponents focus on the problems that VERB, while proponents are optimistic about resolving the problems. 反对者关注.....的问题，而支持者对这些问题的解决抱乐观态度。

Opponents focus on the problems that plague the technology, while proponents are optimistic about resolving the problems.

拓展 Opponents focus on the problems that make this technology inefficient, while proponents are optimistic about resolving the problems.

The reading sides with the views of the x, and the professor is obviously a y 短文支持.....的观点，而教授显然.....

The reading sides with the views of the opponents, and the professor is obviously a proponent.

改述 The reading sides with the views of the critics, and the professor is obviously a supporter.

First, the professor thinks the issue of x can be resolved. 首先，该教授认为.....的问题能够解决。

First, the professor thinks the issue of land usage can be resolved.

改述 First, the professor thinks the issue of how land is used can be resolved.

Second, the professor thinks x [a problem] can be ameliorated. 第二，该教授认为.....

（问题）可以改善。

Second, the professor thinks bird and bat fatalities can be ameliorated.

拓展 Second, the professor thinks accidental bird deaths can be ameliorated.

Finally, on the issue of x, the professor argues that this problem can be avoided by VERBing 最后，关于……问题，该教授认为这个问题能够通过……避免

Finally, on the issue of aesthetics, the professor argues that this problem can be avoided by placing power systems out of sight of most people.

拓展 Finally, on the issue of wind turbine noise, the professor argues that this problem can be avoided by placing the turbines in remote areas.

语块

renewable (source of energy) （能源）可再生的

blend into... 融入……

holds much promise 具有很大的前途

scenic views 风景

commercially exploit ... 商业开发……

adds value to... 使……增值

wind generators 风力发电机

aggressively pursued as ... 把……作为目标积极追求

small-scale 小规模

alternative energy 替代能源

utility companies 公用事业公司

problematic issues 棘手问题

may prove obstacles to... 对……来说可能是个障碍

policy makers 政策制定者

safety zone 安全区域

cost effective 成本划算的，节省成本的

wind turbine 风力涡轮机

offshore 离岸，向海

free from... 没有……的

fly zones 飞行区域

debris 碎片

nesting areas 筑巢区

cleared away 清除

aesthetics 美学

migratory bird act 候鸟法案

drill 在……上钻孔

fatalities 死亡

electric cables 电缆

- endangered species 濒危物种
- atop 在.....顶上
- golden eagle 金雕
- population centers 人口聚居中心
- aesthetically pleasing 有美感的，美观的
- out of sight 看不见，在视野之外

Exercise 2

学习了以上这些策略、实用句型、语块、高分范文和万用写作模板之后，返回去看例题。再读一遍阅读短文，然后再听一遍讲座。如果还是听不懂讲座内容，就反复多听几遍，或者参考录音原稿。然后修改你之前写的作文，或者重新写一篇作文。修改或重写作文时，试着运用本章学到的写作技巧。完成之后，比较一下修改或重写前后的两篇作文，注意不同之处。

录音文稿

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

(woman) Professor: The reading is correct in saying that wind power is being aggressively pursued as an alternative energy form with much potential. And yes, there are still problematic issues. But engineers and policy makers are in the process of improving the technology underlying wind turbines. What's more, as this alternative form of energy becomes increasingly cost effective, more time and money will be devoted to overcoming each of the obstacles.

Let's take a look at land usage and the challenge that brings. A large percentage of our energy needs can be supplied by wind generators offshore and on top of mountains. That will reduce the need for wind projects to use large amounts of land.

Second, the issue related to the fatalities of birds and bats. For one thing, people should keep in mind that any structure—including skyscrapers and even two-story homes—can kill birds when they fly into them. The California wind project mentioned in the reading uses a relatively old turbine design. Old turbines kill more wildlife because they move quickly. Moreover, they are often placed near the fly zones and nesting areas of bird populations. The blades of new turbine models move slowly. Birds are able to avoid these slow-moving blades more easily.

Third, the issue of aesthetics. As I mentioned earlier, in the future, many wind generators will be placed out in the ocean. Developers can drill more than 12 miles offshore and put electric cables underground, so that they are not visible from the land. Additional wind generators will be placed atop mountains, far from major population centers. That means that the unattractive high towers of the turbines will be out of sight of most people.

6 Humanities and the Arts—Literature

人文艺术常考主题2：文学

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何转述第三方观点
 - 转述第三方观点时应该用什么时态
- 解读常考题

文学也是人文艺术的常考主题，一般讨论如何更好地学习某个人文科目。

下面是一个人文艺术领域的例子。看题目并完成Exercise 1。

苏珊举例

Narrator: This section measures writing to communicate in an academic environment. There are two writing tasks.

For Writing Task 1, the integrated writing task, you will read a short passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question. For Writing Task 2, the independent writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now listen to the directions for Writing Task 1.

For Writing Task 1, you will have three minutes to read a short academic passage. You may take notes. The passage will be removed and you will listen to a lecture about the same topic. Again, you may take notes.

You will have 20 minutes to write a response about the relationship between the lecture and the reading. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. Do not give your personal opinion. You will be able to see the reading passage again. You may use your notes.

An effective response will be 150 to 225 words. You will be rated on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content. If you finish your response before time is up, you may go on to Writing Task 2.

Begin reading now.

Poetry has a lot to teach us. Through an analysis of a poem, we can become familiar with its form, content and history. Yet in Literature classes, young people become unhappy when they are asked to rigorously analyze poetry. They fail to realize that only through the benefits of this

investigative approach can one gain a deeper appreciation of the poem's meaning, along with useful critical skills.

First, when the poetry analysis method is not used in the classroom, students miss out on the core meaning of the poem. Because poems tend to be short, young people tend to rush through the text. They might skim a poem once or twice, notice one or two things and then jump to a conclusion—which is often wrong. However, by picking apart each stanza, line and word, the Literature teacher can serve as a catalyst for learning, allowing students to understand precisely what meaning the poet intended to communicate.

Also, by carefully analyzing the structure of a poem, students become aware of the craft that went into making the poem. Young people need to learn about the rules for various poetic forms, such as sonnets and odes. There is also a benefit to learning about a poem's rhyme scheme (that is to say, which lines rhyme with each other) and the use of language, as in the line "Life is a barren field."

Third and last, poetry analysis trains young people to develop disciplined critical skills that can be applied not only to poetry, but to other forms of literature, and even to personal and work settings. By learning how to extract meaning from different types of poems, students become adept at "reading between the lines," appreciating nuance in all sorts of communication.

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.
[Play Track 6. The transcript is found at the end of this chapter.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they challenge the specific points made in the reading passage.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

Exercise 1

根据阅读短文和讲座，完成上面这道作文题。写完作文后，继续学习下一部分内容，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

★ 赋能技能 微观篇章技能：转述第三方观点

由于综合写作题要概括教授的观点，那么转述第三方观点（也叫间接引语）的能力对获得高分至关重要。

因此，综合写作题的作文中应该包含很多间接引语。

转述第三方观点有很多种方式：

The professor **says** that...

The professor **claims** that...

The lecture **points out** that...

She **argues** that...

The professor **talks about** how...

The lecture **states** that...

The professor **wonders** if...

He **denies** that...

上面句子中加粗的动词都可以转述第三方的观点。显然，从传达信息的可理解程度与语法的准确性两个方面来判断，掌握间接引语会帮助你提高综合写作题的分数。

现在先复习一下间接引语。用自己的话转述别人的话时，被转述的部分称为间接引语。写综合写作题的作文时，很多地方需要引用或转述教授的话。不像报纸和小说可以使用引号来直接引用，而新托福综合写作题，考生必须抓住教授的观点或想法然后转述。

间接引语有一些特定规则：

- 1) 从属连词**that**一般放在间接引语之前。
- 2) 间接引语中，主要动词（转述动词后面的动词）的时态要变换，例如：

直接引语	间接引语
一般现在时	一般过去时
一般过去时	过去完成时
现在进行时	过去进行时
一般将来时	过去将来时
现在完成时	过去完成时

- 3) 涉及时间和地点的状语、指示代词等一般要作变动。
- 4) 例外：如果转述的内容涉及真理或事实，那么就不变换时态。

第四点在新托福考试中很重要，因为阅读短文和听力中会有“观点”和“事实”。转述这样的内容就不需变换时态，如：

Professor: The meaning of a poem will vary from one reader to another. That's because each person brings his or her own experiences and insights to a poem. Of all the types of literature, poetry is the most subjective, the most personal.

教授在陈述自己的观点，说的是一种“事实”，所以当用间接引语转述他的观点时，用一般现在时：

He thinks that it is impossible to know precisely the meaning intended by the poet and therefore useless to try to achieve an understanding through detailed analysis.

为了对间接引语有个整体的感知，再看一遍下面的高分范文，并与本章后面的听力原稿进行比较。注意，间接引语中不同的动词时态是如何结合的。你会发现，这篇范文基本

上用一般现在时，但是在最后，用现在完成时描述正在发生的现象：... have robbed the students of the opportunity to critique poetry from a fresh start.由此可见，用间接引语之前，应做好判断。

考生们需注意，在一篇有四个段落的文章中，间接引语一般用在第二段至第四段，因为这三段是引用教授分论点的段落。

● 运用间接引语的策略：

- 1· 一般情况下，间接引语中的动词比原句动词倒退一个时态。
- 2· 考试前认真研究本书中的实用句型和高分范文，学习怎样用间接引语转述教授的观点。
- 3· 总结事实性的观点时，即转述阅读短文和听力讲座时，可以在间接引语中使用一般现在时。
- 4· 注意整篇文章中间接引语时态的统一。如果开始的时候用一般现在时，The professor says that...，那么接下来都用一般现在时，不要随便更换时态。
- 5· 转述教授说的话或阅读短文的观点时尽量使用改述。用自己的话转述地越出彩，越容易得高分。
- 6· 综合写作题中的间接引语往往综合了一些观点，这些观点组成一个复杂的结构，考生要把握好。如：The professor wonders if students will ever be able to think critically if they simply repeat what famous people have said.

高分范文

There is a **dichotomy of opinion**（对立、截然相反的观点） about the usefulness of poetry analysis for students. **One school of thought**（一个学派的观点），as represented by the reading, says it helps students gain a deeper appreciation of the poems. **The opposing camp**（反对阵营），of which the professor is a member, emphasizes the **pitfalls**（隐患） of alienating young people from poems.

First, the professor opposes the reading's view **as regards**（关于） the meaning of poems. He thinks that it is impossible to know precisely the meaning intended by the poet and therefore useless to try to achieve an understanding through detailed analysis. Instead, he argues that poetry is the most subjective form of literature and that each person can have a personal interpretation of the work because of his or her own unique life experiences.

Second, the professor disagrees with the reading on how best to learn the special language usage and forms of poetry. He **discounts the importance of**（认为.....不重要） the learning of poetry-writing rules and **places a high value on**（对.....高度评价，重视） fully experiencing the emotional force of poems. By avoiding analyzing a poem ad nauseam, he argues, a student will be able to appreciate its sound and **imagery**（意象） directly.

Finally, while **concurring with**（同意，意见一致） the importance of critical thinking, the professor **takes an issue with**（对.....持异议，不同意） how poetry analysis skills are taught in the classroom. He thinks that by presenting the **orthodox**（广被接受的） views of established literary critics, the teachers have robbed the students of the opportunity to

万用写作模板

本模板和第五章的模板（关于支持者和反对者的争论）很相似，都在第一段明确列出两种不同的观点。但是，本章模板的独特之处在于，它专门讨论学生该怎样更好地学习某科目或技能（这是综合写作题中常见的话题）。这种模板还可以用于组织正反两方关于人文艺术教学方法或者其他学科教学方法的辩论。例如，讨论学生学习写小说、诗歌、画画或唱歌等的最佳方法；讨论学习科学、数学或历史的最好方法；讨论网络在线学习和在传统教室学习哪种方式更好等。

本模板的语言和逻辑都有些复杂，只要运用得当，就能拿高分。

There is a dichotomy of opinion about _____. One school of thought, as represented by the reading, says _____ helps students gain a deeper appreciation of _____. The opposing camp, of which the professor is a member, emphasizes the pitfalls of _____.

First, the professor opposes the reading's view as regards _____. Instead, he argues that _____ is _____.

Second, the professor disagrees with the reading on how best to _____. He discounts the importance of _____ and places a high value on _____. By _____, he argues, a student will be able to _____.

Finally, while concurring with the importance of _____, the professor takes an issue with how _____ skills are _____.

建立自己的写作句型库

写人文艺术方面话题的作文时，下面的句型都可以用上。

- 阅读好句型成为我的作文佳句

x has a lot to teach us.能教给我们很多东西。

Poetry has a lot to teach us.

拓展 Literature has a lot to teach us.

They fail to realize that only through the benefits of x can one gain a deeper appreciation of y 他们没有意识到只有.....才能.....（**only**置于宾语从句之前，所以宾语从句用了倒装结构）

They fail to realize that only through the benefits of this investigative approach can one gain a deeper appreciation of the poem's meaning, along with useful critical skills.

拓展 They fail to realize that only through the benefits of detailed research can one gain a deeper appreciation of the poet's feelings.

Also, by carefully analyzing x, students become aware of y 此外，通过.....，学生会知道.....

Also, by carefully analyzing the structure of a poem, students become aware of the craft that went into making the poem.

拓展 Also, by carefully analyzing the poem's imagery, students become aware of the **symbolism**（象征手法） used by the poet.

Third and last, x trains young people to develop y skills that can be applied not only to x, but to z, and even to personal and work settings. 第三点也就是最后一点，.....（定语从句中，**not only to x, but to z, and even to...**用法可以模仿）

Third and last, poetry analysis trains young people to develop disciplined critical skills that can be applied not only to poetry, but to other forms of literature, and even to personal and work settings.

拓展 Third and last, memorizing poetry trains young people to develop language skills that can be applied not only to literature, but to other types of writing, and even to personal and work settings.

- 讲座好句型成为我的作文佳句

The reading is correct in saying that x... 短文.....的说法是正确的

The reading is correct in saying that poetry has much to teach us.

拓展 The reading is correct in saying that students should learn about poetry analysis.

First off, let's take x 首先，举个.....的例子吧

First off, let's take meaning.

拓展 First off, let's take the poet's vision.

And what about things like x and y such as z?（**such as**是对y的举例解释，这个句型应学会运用）

And what about things like rhyming patterns and figurative language such as metaphors?

拓展 And what about things like biographies and personal writings such as a poet's diary?

As for the value of x, no doubt y skills are good skills to hone. 关于.....，毫无疑问.....是改进的良好技巧。

As for the value of critical thinking, no doubt critical skills are good skills to hone.

拓展 As for the value of a foreign language, no doubt English language skills are good skills to hone.

But how can x learn to VERB by simply VERBing? 但是仅仅通过.....，某人如何能够学会.....？

But how can they learn to think critically for themselves by simply parroting what many famous critics have said?

拓展 But how can students learn to analyze a poem by simply memorizing other people's poems?

- 高分范文佳句

There is a dichotomy of opinion about x 关于.....，有一种截然对立的观点。

There is a dichotomy of opinion about the usefulness of poetry analysis for students.

改述 There is a dichotomy of opinion about the best way to teach poetry to young people.

One school of thought, as represented by the reading, says x helps students gain a deeper appreciation of y 一个学派的观点（正如短文所代表的）认为.....

One school of thought, as represented by the reading, says it helps students gain a deeper appreciation of the poems.

改述 One school of thought, as represented by the reading, says analysis helps students gain a more accurate understanding of poetry.

The opposing camp, of which the professor is a member, emphasizes the pitfalls of x 反对阵营（教授就是其中之一）强调.....

The opposing camp, of which the professor is a member, emphasizes the pitfalls of alienating young people from poems.

拓展 The opposing camp, of which the professor is a member, emphasizes the pitfalls of a tedious analytical method.

First, the professor opposes the reading's view as regards x 首先，该教授反对阅读短文中有关.....的观点

First, the professor opposes the reading's view as regards the meaning of poems.

改述 First, the professor opposes the reading's view as regards how teachers should approach the meaning of a poem.

Instead, he argues that x is... 相反，他认为.....

Instead, he argues that poetry is the most subjective form of literature and that each person can have a personal interpretation of the work because of his or her own unique life experiences.

改述 Instead, he argues that poetry can only be meaningful to someone when it has a personal meaning.

Second, the professor disagrees with the reading on how best to VERB 其次，该教授不同意阅读短文中有关.....的论点

Second, the professor disagrees with the reading on how best to learn the special language usage and forms of poetry.

改述 Second, the professor disagrees with the reading on how best to appreciate the structures and word choices in poetry.

He discounts the importance of x and places a high value on y 他认为.....不重要，而高度评价.....

He discounts the importance of the learning of poetry-writing rules and places a high value on fully experiencing the emotional force of poems.

改述 He discounts the importance of memorizing **formulae**（原则） and places a high value on a listener's intuitive reactions to the poem.

Finally, while concurring with the importance of x, the professor takes an issue with how y skills are VERBed 最后，虽然同意.....的观点时，但教授对.....提出了异议

Finally, while concurring with the importance of critical thinking, the professor takes an issue

with how poetry analysis skills are taught in the classroom.

改述 Finally, while concurring with the importance of critical skills, the professor takes an issue with how these skills are best developed.

语块

rigorously	严密地，缜密地
extract meaning from...	从.....推测含义
investigative approach	探究细节的方法
be adept at ...	对.....熟练的，擅长的
appreciation	理解，领会
reading between the lines	体会言外之意
poetry analysis	诗歌分析
nuance	细微差别
miss out on	错过；漏掉
doing... a disservice	对.....不利，损害.....
core meaning	核心意义，中心意思
tedious	枯燥的，乏味的
rush through	匆忙完成
worth this risk	可能的事，能做到的事
skim	浏览
first off	首先，一开始
jump to a conclusion	过早下结论；贸然下结论
subjective	主观的
stanza	诗节
meaningful	有意义的
catalyst for...的诱导者
figurative language	形象化的语言，比喻性语言
craft	艺术手法
metaphors	隐喻
sonnets	十四行诗
long-winded analysis	冗长的分析
ode	颂诗
emotional impact	情感上的冲击
rhyme scheme	韵律；韵脚
hone	改进，改善
disciplined critical skills	训练有素的批判技能
parroting	机械地模仿

Exercise 2

学习了以上这些策略、实用句型、语块、高分范文和万用写作模板之后，返回去看例题。再读一遍阅读短文，然后再听一遍讲座。如果还是听不懂讲座内容，就反复多听几遍，或者参考录音原稿。然后修改你之前写的作文，或者重新写一篇作文。修改或重写作文时，试着运用本章学到的写作技巧。完成之后，比较一下修改或重写前后的两篇作文，注意不同之处。

录音原稿

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

(man) Professor: The reading is correct in saying that poetry has much to teach us. Unfortunately, teachers who insist on making students do a poetry analysis every time they read poems are doing their students a disservice. The only thing that teachers accomplish through tedious poetry analysis is making young people want to stay far away from poetry. None of the benefits mentioned in the reading is worth this risk.

First off, let's take meaning. The meaning of a poem will vary from one reader to another. That's because each person brings his or her own experiences and insights to a poem. Of all the types of literature, poetry is the most subjective, the most personal. The more a teacher lectures about the deep meaning of this or that phrase, the less likely it is that a student will be affected by the poem in a meaningful way.

And what about things like rhyming patterns and figurative language such as metaphors? Don't teachers need to identify each of these for students? No, not really. When young people read or listen to poetry, they should be able to directly experience the pure pleasure of sound and image. Even if they can't understand all the words, they can still enjoy them, in much the same way we enjoy listening to a song and don't catch the meaning of every word. A long-winded analysis of poetry weakens a poem's emotional impact.

As for the value of critical thinking, no doubt critical skills are good skills to hone. The problem is, most teachers doing poetry analyses with their students present all the "accepted" interpretations that have been made by scholars over the years. Teachers expect students to learn from these critiques. But how can they learn to think critically for themselves by simply parroting what many famous critics have said?

7 Life Sciences—Ecology

生命科学常考主题2：生态环境

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何有技巧地重复关键词使上下文连贯
 - 如何描述双方的争论
- 解读常考题

本章重新回到生命科学这一学术语境，探讨考试中常见的一个主题——生态环境。

下面是生命科学领域的例子。看题目并完成Exercise1。

苏珊举例

Narrator: This section measures writing to communicate in an academic environment. There are two writing tasks.

For Writing Task 1, the integrated writing task, you will read a short passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question. For Writing Task 2, the independent writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now listen to the directions for Writing Task 1.

For Writing Task 1, you will have three minutes to read a short academic passage. You may take notes. The passage will be removed and you will listen to a lecture about the same topic. Again, you may take notes.

You will have 20 minutes to write a response about the relationship between the lecture and the reading. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. Do not give your personal opinion. You will be able to see the reading passage again. You may use your notes.

An effective response will be 150 to 225 words. You will be rated on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content. If you finish your response before time is up, you may go on to Writing Task 2.

Begin reading now.

A variety of carp are native to Asia, including the bighead and silver carp. More than forty years ago, several species of Asian carp were imported to the southern US to control algae in fish farms. However, in their new environment they are very aggressive and have been migrating

northwards, causing economic and ecological damage to the Mississippi River watershed. Now, five states that adjoin the Great Lakes have filed suit against several government agencies, demanding that the Chicago area shipping locks be temporarily shut to prevent the carp from entering the Great Lakes water system. They base their lawsuit on several arguments.

The first point the States make is that the problem is urgent. Asian carp may soon infiltrate the Great Lakes system through the shipping locks and sewage facilities near Chicago. To support the claim of urgency, the States cite a research study by a professor who found Asian carp DNA in the water of the canals leading to Lake Michigan. This DNA is proof that live Asian carp are already very close to the Great Lakes system.

The States also claim that once Asian carp penetrate the locks, they will multiply and overpower the Great Lakes ecosystems. If Asian carp are present in a water system, they quickly dominate that system. They eat voraciously and reproduce rapidly, disrupting the food chain of native fish species. These giant fish even disturb human activity; when boats pass, they jump in the air, often striking passengers.

Third, the States maintain that if Asian carp enter Lake Michigan, they could have a significant negative impact on the \$7 billion Great Lakes fishery industry. Although shutting the locks will cause some loss of revenue to shipping companies and tourist boats, this hardship to the economy would, it is argued, be minor compared to the financial damage caused by Asian carp.

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.
[Play Track 7. The transcript is found at the end of this chapter.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture you just heard, explaining how they answer the specific arguments made in the reading.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

Exercise 1

根据阅读短文和讲座，完成上面这道作文题。写完作文后，继续学习下一部分内容，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

★ **PCC PCC学习方法** 通过重复关键词做到前后连贯

衔接自然和前后连贯是一篇优秀作文的必备要素。衔接自然指句与句或段落与段落之间紧凑，语法正确；而连贯则指写作时思维的顺畅，其核心在于语义的衔接。

大部分考生认为使作文更连贯的最好方法是在分论点段落中用上first，second和third这类词汇。综合写作题的作文包含三个分论点，这一特点让考生自然想到使用这种形式的连接词。但是，这种方法很难拿到高分，尤其是结构不容易预测的独立写作题。

综合写作题和独立写作题做到前后连贯的有效方法是重复关键词。重复关键词并不是机械、无意义地重复所有的短语和分句。重复必须有技巧。利用重复手法来营造一篇前后连贯的作文需要做到三个简单的步骤。

写出连贯句子的三个简单步骤

- 1) 写作时，把重点放在语义和内容上。
- 2) 根据语义从前一句（或前一段）抓住最重要的话题或观点，然后选出关键词或关键短语。
- 3) 站在读者（也就是评分者）的角度，一步步试着用关键词连接上下两个句子，把前后两个句子有机地结合起来。

下面是从综合写作题和独立写作题中节选的段落，用来说明怎样有技巧地重复关键词（重复的关键词为粗体）。

Task 1:

First, the agencies question the results of **the DNA study** cited by the States. They think the **methodology of the DNA study** was flawed and argue that **the study** does not prove there are live carp in the Great Lakes. In fact, no one was able to find **live Asian Carp** in the Great Lakes.

这是本章高分范文的第二段。本段反驳阅读短文中的第一个分论点。本段通过重复关键词the DNA study, the study和methodology把讲座和阅读短文联系了起来。同时，本段的观点表达顺畅，逻辑清晰（阅读短文提到the DNA study，而教授则提及new DNA methodology）。

同样，live Asian carp也是使文章连贯、通顺的关键词。Live Asian carp出现在阅读短文中，living carp和live Asian carp出现在讲座中。通过重复live Asian carp，考生以连贯且强有力的方式表达了自己的观点。

Task 2:

Borrowing money from a friend is something that I would never do. In fact, if a friend ever wants to **borrow money** from me, he had better have a compelling reason. I am relieved to say I don't think any of my friends would even attempt to **ask me for money**. **Money borrowing** is one of the most often cited causes for the demise of a friendship.

本段是第9章第三篇写作预测题高分范文的开头段落，第一句就是文章的论点句，考生明确表明了自己的观点。注意第二句是如何做到连贯性的：考生重复了关键词borrow money。再看第三句，考生通过改述再次进行重复，ask me for money是borrow money from me的改述。最后一句用了money borrowing，只改了第一句中borrowing money的顺序。这种方法很有技巧，因为它不仅使文章前后连贯，也总结了文章的论点，为接下来更详细的分论点段落做了铺垫。

- 通过重复关键词使文章连贯的策略：
 - 1 · 重点关注自己想要表达的意思。
 - 2 · 在综合写作题中总结教授观点时，简要指出讲座与阅读短文的不同之处或相同之处。可以选择一两个在阅读短文和讲座中都出现的关键词，例如the DNA study。这会增加作文语言上的连贯性。
 - 3 · 对于独立写作题中的句子，有选择地从前面的句子中挑出一两个关键词。但注意不要随便重复某个词。
 - 4 · 心中时刻记着读者（也就是评分者），尽量使观点简单易懂。把每个句子想象成连接上下句的桥梁。

高分范文

看高分范文和万用写作模板之前，大家需要了解ETS出的这类题型与其他题目题型的不同之处。大多数的综合写作题，阅读短文提出一个观点（有三个分论点），教授在讲座中提出反驳性的观点（也有三个分论点）。但是本题的阅读短文描述一个问题（北美五大湖中亚洲鲤鱼的泛滥）和问题的解决方案。阅读短文出现了一方的观点，即提起诉讼的五个州的观点和论述，外加三个分论点和论证。而在讲座中，教授没有说自己的观点，而是总结另一方，即被起诉的政府机构的观点。换言之，教授用第三人称描述了政府机构对五个州的反驳论点。

像这道作文题型，在新托福写作考试中并不常见。但是这种类型确实会时不时出现，因此考生们还是要做好充分的准备。

People in the Great Lakes states are worried that Asian carp, an invasive species, might invade the Great Lakes and cause great damage to their economies. Hoping to keep that from happening, five of those states filed a lawsuit in order to have the waterway locks closed. The professor talks about the government agencies' objections to the arguments put forth by the States.

First, the agencies question the results of the DNA study cited by the States. They think the methodology of the DNA study was flawed and argue that the study does not prove there are live carp in the Great Lakes. In fact, no one was able to find live Asian carp in the Great Lakes.

For the second argument, the States talk about how fast carp can grow and multiply, inferring they would quickly dominate the Great Lakes. But the agencies hold a contradictory view, believing it is quite difficult for a new species to overtake an ecosystem. They suggest that there are many hurdles facing an invasive species. For example, it needs to have a sufficient number to sustain its population. In ninety percent of the cases, new species fail to establish themselves in the new environment.

Last, the agencies reject the States' claim of potential financial loss as **conjecture**（推测），**making the case that**（提出理由证明）a serious invasion may never take place. In defending their position, the agencies argue that the economy of encompassing commercial shipping and recreational boating, over one billion dollars, would be destroyed immediately if the locks were to be closed.

万用写作模板

下面的模板适用于综合写作题中关于教授总结反方观点的题目。如果你遇到的题目是关于两方之间的纠纷，那么这个模板正好套用。

〔文章第一、二句简短地介绍背景信息，指出问题和第一方的观点〕. The professor talks about 〔第二方〕 objections to the arguments put forth by 〔第一方〕.

First, 〔第二方〕 question(s) the results of _____. They think _____ was flawed and argue that _____ does not prove _____.

For the second argument, 〔第一方〕 talk(s) about _____, inferring they would _____. But 〔第二方〕 hold(s) a contradictory view, believing it is quite difficult for _____ to _____.

Last, 〔第二方〕 reject(s) 〔第一方〕 claim of _____ as conjecture, making the case that _____.

建立自己的写作句型库

写生命科学方面话题的作文时，下面的句型都可以用上。

- 阅读好句型成为我的作文佳句

They base their x on several arguments. 他们用几个方面的理由作为.....的依据。

They base their lawsuit on several arguments.

拓展 They base their opinion on several arguments.

To support the claim of..., x cite a research study by x 为了支持.....的说法，.....引证了由某人进行的研究

To support the claim of urgency, the States cite a research study by a professor who found Asian carp DNA in the water of the canals leading to Lake Michigan.

拓展 To support the claim of imminent danger, the plaintiffs cite a research study by a Biology professor.

x is proof that... ..是.....的证据

This DNA is proof that live Asian carp are already very close to the Great Lakes system.

改述 The DNA is proof that some Asian carp have already infiltrated the locks.

x also claim that once y VERB, they will... 某人还声称一旦.....

The States also claim that once Asian carp penetrate the locks, they will multiply and overpower the Great Lakes ecosystems.

拓展 Fish experts also claim that once invasive species enter a new habitat, they will take over that habitat.

Third, x maintain that if x VERB, they could VERB 第三，某人认为如果.....，那么.....（此处需用虚拟语气）

Third, the States maintain that if Asian carp enter Lake Michigan, they could have a significant negative impact on the \$7 billion Great Lakes fishery industry.

拓展 Third, the suit maintains that if they gain access into Lake Michigan, the carp could destroy traditional ways of life on the Great Lakes.

- 讲座好句型成为我的作文佳句

Yet x reject the assumptions and arguments made by y 然而，.....否认了.....的假设和论据

Yet the agencies responsible for the locks and other waterway functions reject the assumptions and arguments made by the States.

拓展 Yet the experts hired by the agencies reject the assumptions and arguments made by the States.

First of all, x does not provide adequate information about y 首先，.....没能提供关于.....的合适信息

First of all, the new DNA methodology cited by the States does not provide adequate information about the number of living Asian carp currently swimming in the lake waters.

拓展 First of all, the professor's methodology does not provide adequate information about real live fish swimming in Lake Michigan.

x have also rebutted the States' second claim,还驳斥了第二种说法

The agencies have also rebutted the States' second claim, the imminent hazard to the ecosystem.

改述 The Chicago agencies have also rebutted the second point, the serious threat to the environment.

If x were VERBed, y could not take place. 如果.....，.....不会发生。（该句型用的是虚拟语气）

If the locks were closed, most of these activities could not take place.

拓展 If electric barriers were installed, penetration by Asian carp could not take place.

- 高分范文佳句

The professor talks about x's objections to the arguments put forth by y 该教授论述了某一方针对另一方提出来的论据的反对意见

The professor talks about the government agencies' objections to the arguments put forth by the States.

拓展 The professor talks about the company's objections to the arguments put forth by scientists.

First, x question the results of y 首先，一方质疑另一方的结果

First, the agencies question the results of the DNA study cited by the States.

拓展 First, the government questions the results of the testing done in Lake Michigan.

They think x was flawed and argue that y does not prove... 他们认为.....有缺陷，主张.....不能证明.....

They think the methodology of the DNA study was flawed and argue that the study does not

prove there are live carp in the Great Lakes.

拓展 They think the research design was flawed and argue that the evidence does not prove that there are carp in Lake Michigan.

For the second argument, x talk about..., inferring they would VERB 对于第二个论点，.....讨论了.....，推断.....

For the second argument, the States talk about how fast carp can grow and multiply, inferring they would quickly dominate the Great Lakes.

改述 For the second argument, the States talk about the nature of carp reproduction, inferring they would quickly multiply.

But x hold a contradictory view, believing it is quite difficult for y to VERB 但.....意见相反，认为.....很难.....

But the agencies hold a contradictory view, believing it is quite difficult for a new species to overtake an ecosystem.

改述 But the waterway agencies hold a contradictory view, believing it is quite difficult for carp to dominate other species.

Last, x reject y's claim of z as conjecture, making the case that... 最后，某一方拒绝另一方.....的推测，提出理由证明.....

Last, the agencies reject the States' claim of potential financial loss as conjecture, making the case that a serious invasion may never take place.

改述 Last, the agencies reject the lawsuit's claim of future economic disaster as conjecture, making the case that a large-scale invasion is unlikely.

语块

carp	鲤鱼
dominate	支配
be native to...	原产自.....
voraciously	贪得无厌地
imported to...	引进到.....
disrupting	扰乱
algae	藻类
food chain	食物链
aggressive	侵略性的
fishery industry	水产业
watershed	集水区
loss of revenue	税收流失
the Great Lakes	北美五大湖
navigational locks	导航水闸
filed suit against...	对.....起诉
pathway to...	通向.....的通道

government agencies 政府机关
waterway functions 航道功能
lawsuit 诉讼案件
imminent hazard 迫在眉睫的危险
urgent 急迫的
invasive species 入侵物种
infiltrate 潜入，渗透
sufficient numbers 足够数量
locks 水闸
self-sustaining population 数量自我维持的种群
sewage facilities 污水处理工厂
exotic species 外来物种
penetrate 进入
recreational boating 休闲划船
overpower 压倒
security operations 安全运行
ecosystems 生态系统
speculation 推测

Exercise 2

学习了以上这些策略、实用句型、语块、高分范文和万用写作模板之后，返回去看例题。再读一遍阅读短文，然后再听一遍讲座。如果还是听不懂讲座内容，就反复多听几遍，或者参考录音原稿。然后修改你之前写的作文，或者重新写一篇作文。修改或重写作文时，试着运用本章学到的写作技巧。完成之后，比较一下修改或重写前后的两篇作文，注意不同之处。

录音原稿

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the topic you just read about.

(woman) Professor: Five of the Great Lakes states located downstream from Chicago are concerned about the threat of Asian carp. Their joint legal suit seeks an order to close the navigational locks that provide a pathway to the Great Lakes. Yet the agencies responsible for the locks and other waterway functions reject the assumptions and arguments made by the States.

First of all, the new DNA methodology cited by the States does not provide adequate information about the number of living Asian carp currently swimming in the lake waters. Efforts to find living carp have come up empty-handed. Thus, at this time, the government waterway agencies do not believe the DNA methodology is a reliable predictor of live carp in the waters.

The agencies have also rebutted the States' second claim, the imminent hazard to the ecosystem. Their position is supported by the fact that invasive species need to enter the lake waters in sufficient numbers in order to create a self-sustaining population. An expert hired by the agencies explained that, in fact, ninety-percent of invasions by exotic species fail. This expert identified several factors that will stop any invasion, such as the specific habitats carp need to lay eggs in.

Third, the economic threat to the fishery industry. Over a billion dollars is earned each year through activities involving the Chicago locks, including commercial shipping, recreational boating and security operations for the city of Chicago. If the locks were closed, most of these activities could not take place. The States' claim about the potential financial loss to the fishery industry is, at this point, mere speculation. However, the financial loss from closing the locks is real, they argue, and would begin the minute they were shut down.

8 Social Sciences—Advertising

社会科学常考主题2：广告

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何应对不熟悉的行话与行业术语
 - 怎么赞同或反驳某观点
- 解读常考题

讨论广告问题也是综合写作题中常见的话题。

现在看一个社会科学方面的例子。看题目并完成Exercise 1。

苏珊举例

Narrator: This section measures writing to communicate in an academic environment. There are two writing tasks.

For Writing Task 1, the integrated writing task, you will read a short passage and listen to a lecture and then answer a question. For Writing Task 2, the independent writing task, you will answer a question based on your own knowledge and experience.

Now listen to the directions for Writing Task 1.

For Writing Task 1, you will have three minutes to read a short academic passage. You may take notes. The passage will be removed and you will listen to a lecture about the same topic. Again, you may take notes.

You will have 20 minutes to write a response about the relationship between the lecture and the reading. Try to answer the question as completely as possible using information from the reading passage and the lecture. Do not give your personal opinion. You will be able to see the reading passage again. You may use your notes.

An effective response will be 150 to 225 words. You will be rated on the quality of your writing and on the completeness and accuracy of the content. If you finish your response before time is up, you may go on to Writing Task 2.

Begin reading now.

Strategic advertising is vital for businesses who want to get their names out to customers, along with information about their products and services. The more competitive the market, the more difficult it is to get people to pay attention to an advertising message, making it important for

businesses to choose the most appropriate communication medium. Both radio and television advertising can be effective. However, in general, business owners gain better results from purchasing radio airtime.

One of the strongest advantages of radio over TV is that the commercial spots can be better targeted to customer segments. Because they have many different kinds of programs, often with local DJs, radio stations can reach the right people at the right time. That way, companies can run commercials during the time when the most potential customers are tuned in. Moreover, listeners say they are more interested in a product or service when they hear about it on their preferred station, from their favorite radio host.

The costs for producing and airing radio commercials are cheaper than those for TV by a significant margin. For a television commercial, the business has to pay for the services of a video production company in addition to paying for the actual airtime. One reason TV commercials are more expensive is that they involve more, what with script development, multiple shoots and a lengthier editing process.

Finally, radio commercials have a better chance of capturing the full attention of the prospective customer. When, for example, people are in a car, trapped in heavy traffic, or when they are sitting in a bus or subway, they are usually bored and have nothing better to do than listen to commercials. This allows the audience to focus completely on the message.

一般情况下，综合写作题的讲座都是反驳阅读短文的论点。但是，ETS出版的《托福考试官方指南》中指出，综合写作题的讲座也可能赞同阅读短文中的观点，因此考生要做好心理准备。本章提供了两篇讲座，一篇赞同阅读短文中的观点，另一篇则反驳阅读短文中的观点。

先来看一个赞同阅读短文中观点的讲座。

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

[Play Track 8. The transcript is found at the end of this chapter.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they strengthen specific points made in the reading passage.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

下面是反驳阅读短文中观点的讲座。

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

[Play Track 8. The transcript is found at the end of this volume.]

Summarize the points made in the lecture, being sure to explain how they challenge the specific claims made in the reading passage.

Narrator: You have 20 minutes to write Task 1.

Exercise 1

根据阅读短文和讲座，完成上面这道作文题。写完作文后，继续学习下一部分内容，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

★ 赋能技能 微观篇章技能：应对行话与行业术语

行话和行业术语是理解整篇讲座和阅读短文的关键因素。考试涉及的学科和分支学科如此之多，考生如何应对这些学科的行话和行业术语呢？

应对行话和行业术语的三个简单步骤

- 1) 在阅读短文中，找到定义句，尤其是在第一段中。
- 2) 在阅读短文和讲座中，运用行话或行业术语的语境猜测其大概意思。
- 3) 充分利用阅读短文和讲座中的其他信息。

在详细介绍应对行业术语的技巧之前，需要强调一点：除了记住学科词汇之外，没有别的方法。此外，由于词义在不同的语境中会有不同的意思，所以单词和短语应放在特定的语境中去记。

但总会有不熟悉的词汇和短语，这种情况下怎么办？一些学术领域会相对容易懂一些，如描述广告的语言比描述天文学和基因学的语言更容易一些。但是就算管理学和广告学之类的“软科学”也会有自己的行业术语。有时正是诸如demographics（人口统计学）和airtime（广播时间）之类的使用频率较低的专业术语影响了考生对文章的理解。然而在通常情况下，行业术语的微妙之处在于，一些日常用语在特殊领域会有不同的意思。

例如，本章阅读短文中的message和shoots。考生知道message的意思是note，在句子Leave me a message中的意思是“便条”。shoots的意思是small sprouts of plants，在短语bamboo shoots中的意思是“竹笋”。但是在这篇短文中这两个词是广告业中的行话，要根据语境判断词的意思。现在看看第一句中message出现的语境：

The more competitive the market, the more difficult it is to get people to pay attention to an advertising message, making it important for businesses to choose the most appropriate communication medium.

从这个句子可以看出message是语块advertising message（广告讯息）中的意思，根据语境（pay attention to the advertising _____），可以推断出message的意思是the main point that advertisers want customers to receive。此外，除了利用语境之外，考生还应该利用阅读短文和讲座中的其他信息（文中重复出现的词语和概念）。例如在这篇阅读短文中，

message又一次出现在最后一段的最后一行：

This allows the audience to focus completely on the message.

到了阅读短文最后，只要考生多加注意就可以准确推断出这些术语的意思。

现在来看另一个例子，也就是本章两个讲座中都出现的专业术语spots。

For one thing, there are fewer people involved in developing and producing the spots. (录音原稿1)

For instance, the claim that radio spots better target potential customers. (录音原稿2)

如果考生根据记忆中的意思或直接翻译spots的字面意思，那就可能认为spots是“斑点”的意思；但在这个语境下它并不是这个意思。如果考生多注意一下，就会意识到这段讲的是面向顾客的commercial spots。从阅读短文的语境考生可以猜出commercial spots的意思是a segment of time reserved for a commercial（广告插播时段），因此可以猜出这两处的spots意为“（电视、广播节目的）固定时段”。

● 应对行话和行业术语的策略：

- 1. 在阅读短文中，通过观察词汇的构成来寻找词义的线索。例如，在communication medium中medium看起来与media意思相近。
- 2. 不要根据字面意思推测行业术语的意思，这会浪费时间，而且特殊意义的词汇很有可能与词典里的意思相差很大。
- 3. 在阅读短文中找定义句，尤其是介绍主题的第一段。例如，关于市场营销的一篇短文，第一句有一个很难的术语viral marketing（病毒式营销），它被定义为：Viral marketing, the rapid spread of product information through customer interaction, is a powerful way to promote a product.
- 4. 在阅读短文和讲座中，利用语境猜测行话或行业术语的意思。阅读短文中尤应如此，因为在阅读短文中可以看到词汇的构成，并且可以找到第一次介绍关键概念的地方。
- 5. ETS会有意设计一些信息帮助考生理解行业术语。注意那些有目的重复的关键词和概念。
- 6. 在讲座中，遇到不熟悉的词时，不要惊慌。接着往下听，下面一般会有线索和解释。

两篇高分范文和万用写作模板分别针对支持阅读短文中观点和反驳阅读短文中观点的讲座。这种写作题要求比较两种不同的观点（x和y）。支持阅读短文中观点的讲座认为x比y好，而反驳阅读短文中观点的讲座则持相反意见。在这道特殊的写作题里，x指的是收音机广告，y指电视广告。

高分范文1（赞同观点， **x is better than y**）

In order to **entice**（诱使） consumers to buy their products and services, businesses need to communicate with consumers

regularly. The reading compares two of the ways a business can do this and argues that radio advertising is superior to TV advertising. The professor fully supports the views expressed in the reading.

First, on the question of targeting customers, the professor **tacitly**（不言而喻地） agrees with the reading. She gives an example of radio advertising, i.e., tying radio advertising to event marketing. She says companies can sponsor events and have the radio DJ insert their advertising messages while the DJ covers the events live. By taking advantage of the excitement of an event, the company can better influence the radio listeners.

Second, regarding the question of cost, the professor is also in agreement with the reading. She emphasizes the cost savings by characterizing them as "exponential." She goes on to explain how a company can save money on producing radio spots, by using company staff and utilizing the recording facilities offered by radio stations for free. She also notes the benefit of "personal touch" that goes with a company's self-produced commercials.

Finally, the professor supports the reading's view by stating it is possible to attract listeners'attention to radio advertising by the clever manipulation of sound. She further points out a problem that affects TV advertising but not radio. She says consumers are able to skip TV commercials by the use of smart recording devices such as DVRs.

万用写作模板（赞同观点）

下面的模板是表示赞同观点的逻辑框架。显然，考生需要在每一个分论点后面加一些细节性的陈述，使文章个性化。

〔开头简洁明了地介绍一下收音机广告和电视广告的作用和阅读短文对这两种广告所持的观点〕. The professor fully supports the _____ expressed in the reading.

First, on the question of _____, the professor tacitly agrees with the reading.〔用三到四个句子陈述教授的说法〕.

Second, regarding the question of _____, the professor is also in agreement with the reading.〔用三到四个句子陈述教授的说法〕.

Finally, the professor supports the reading's view by stating it is possible to _____ by _____. She further points out a problem that affects _____ but not _____.

高分范文2（反驳观点， **x is not better than y**）

In order to entice consumers to buy their products and services, businesses need to communicate with consumers regularly. The reading compares two ways of communicating and argues that radio advertising is superior to TV advertising. However, the professor does not agree with the views expressed in the reading.

First, on the question of targeting customers, the professor thinks the reading's argument is based on out-dated information. He says cable TV and advertising tied to cell phones allow companies to target specific market segments. He further mentions that even network TV stations nowadays have developed **demographic information** (人口统计信息) for their various TV programs, which can help sponsors decide which programs to place their commercials in.

Second, on the question of cost, the professor finds the reading's argument inadequate. He thinks it is more important to consider the effectiveness of advertising. To support his view, he says people consider TV advertising to be more believable and tend to respect companies that advertise on TV. He concludes by saying radio advertising gives companies a higher return on investment on their TV advertising dollars.

Finally, the professor attacks the reading's assertion that listeners pay attention to contents of radio advertising. He says radio commercials are mere "background noise." He also points out that radio stations play too much advertising, causing listeners to tune to other stations or turn off the radio. Then he says TV does not have as much of this problem because TV programming is generally more **engaging** (有趣的) and better at attracting viewers' attention.

万用写作模板（反驳观点）

正如上面持赞同观点的万用写作模板，持反驳观点的万用写作模板也要求考生在每个分论点后面加一些细节性的陈述。

〔开头简洁明了地介绍一下收音机广告和电视广告的作用〕. The reading compares two ways of _____ and argues that _____[x]_____ is superior to _____[y]_____. However, the professor does not agree with the _____ expressed in the reading.

First, on the question of _____, the professor thinks the reading's argument is based on _____ information.〔用两到三个句子陈述教授的说法〕.

Second, on the question of _____, the professor finds the reading's argument inadequate. He thinks it is more important to consider _____. To support his view, he says people consider _____[y]_____ to be more believable and tend to _____.

Finally, the professor attacks the reading's assertion that _____. He says _____[x]_____ are _____. He also points out that _____, causing _____ to _____.

建立自己的写作句型库

下面句型适用于综合写作题中有关社会科学的题目。

- 阅读好句型成为我的作文佳句
Both x and y can be effective.和.....都有作用。

Both radio and television advertising can be effective.

拓展 Both broadcast and print media can be effective.

However, in general, x gain better results from VERBing 但总体来说，.....从.....能获取更好的成果

However, in general, business owners gain better results from purchasing radio airtime.

拓展 However, in general, small businesses gain better results from local radio commercials.

One of the strongest advantages of x over y is that z can be better VERBed胜过.....最突出的优势之一是.....

One of the strongest advantages of radio over TV is that the commercial spots can be better targeted to customer segments.

拓展 One of the strongest advantages of radio advertising over television advertising is that the budget can be better controlled.

The costs for x are cheaper than those for y by a significant margin.的价格比.....的价格要便宜很多。

The costs for producing and airing radio commercials are cheaper than those for TV by a significant margin.

拓展 The costs for developing radio ads are cheaper than those for television ads by a significant margin.

Finally, x have a better chance of capturing the full attention of y 最后，.....有更好的机会获得.....的全面关注

Finally, radio commercials have a better chance of capturing the full attention of the prospective customer.

拓展 Finally, social network sites have a better chance of capturing the full attention of young consumers.

- 讲座好句型成为我的作文佳句

赞同观点——

The x pointed out in the reading simply cannot be overemphasized. 阅读中提到的.....怎么强调都不为过。

The advantages pointed out in the reading simply cannot be overemphasized.

拓展 The importance of education pointed out in the reading simply cannot be overemphasized.

One powerful way that companies can benefit through x is by doing y 企业能从.....获利的一种有效方法是.....

One powerful way that companies can benefit through radio advertising is by doing event marketing.

拓展 One powerful way that companies can benefit through radio advertising is by doing DJ promotions.

For one thing, there are fewer people involved in VERBing 首先，.....需要的人手要

少一些

For one thing, there are fewer people involved in developing and producing the spots.

拓展 For one thing, there are fewer people involved in labor-intensive activities.

Sure, x is limited to..., but this can be used to an advantage, if y is... ..在.....方面确实有局限性，但这种局限性可以变为一种优势.....

Sure, radio is limited to sound, but this can be used to an advantage, if the message is well crafted.

拓展 Sure, radio is limited to audio, but this can be used to an advantage, if the music is well chosen.

反驳观点——

But the points made in the reading passage are not really accurate when you look at x 但实际上，阅读短文中的观点并不正确.....

But the points made in the reading passage are not really accurate when you look at today's media climate.

拓展 But the points made in the reading passage are not really accurate when you look at all the expenses.

But studies have shown that the public considers x more ADJECTIVE than y 但研究显示，公众认为.....比.....更.....

But studies have shown that the public considers the messages presented on television more authoritative than those presented on the radio.

拓展 But studies have shown that the public considers television programs more enjoyable than radio programs.

Finally, it's simply not true that... 最后，.....说法是根本不对的

Finally, it's simply not true that radio listeners always focus carefully on the advertisement message.

拓展 Finally, it's simply not true that radio commercials are cheap to produce.

● 高分范文佳句

赞同观点——

The professor fully supports the x expressed in the reading. 该教授完全赞同阅读短文中表达的.....

The professor fully supports the views expressed in the reading.

改述 The professor fully supports the opinions expressed in the reading.

First, on the question of x, the professor tacitly agrees with the reading. 首先，在.....问题上，教授显然同意阅读短文中的说法。

First, on the question of targeting customers, the professor tacitly agrees with the reading.

拓展 First, on the question of market focus, the professor tacitly agrees with the reading.

Second, regarding the question of x, the professor is also in agreement with the reading.

其次，关于.....的问题，教授也同意阅读短文的观点。

Second, regarding the question of cost, the professor is also in agreement with the reading.

拓展 Second, regarding the question of ROI (return on investment), the professor is also in agreement with the reading.

Finally, the professor supports the reading's view by stating it is possible to VERB by...

最后，通过陈述.....，教授表达了自己同阅读短文一致的立场

Finally, the professor supports the reading's view by stating it is possible to attract listeners' attention to radio advertising by the clever manipulation of sound.

拓展 Finally, the professor supports the reading's view by stating it is possible to persuade listeners by choosing charismatic DJs.

She further points out a problem that affects x but not y 她进一步指出影响.....但并不会对.....造成影响的问题

She further points out a problem that affects TV advertising but not radio.

拓展 She further points out a problem that affects video production but not audio production.

反驳观点——

The reading compares two ways of VERBing and argues that x is superior to y. 阅读短文比较了.....的两种方式，认为.....要优于.....。

The reading compares two ways of communicating and argues that radio advertising is superior to TV advertising.

拓展 The reading compares two ways of advertising and argues that a radio commercial is superior to a television commercial.

However, the professor does not agree with the x expressed in the reading. 然而，教授并不同意阅读短文表达的.....

However, the professor does not agree with the views expressed in the reading.

改述 However, the professor does not agree with the opinions expressed in the reading.

First, on the question of x, the professor thinks the reading's argument is based on y information. 首先，在.....的问题上，教授认为阅读短文里的论据是基于.....的信息。

First, on the question of targeting customers, the professor thinks the reading's argument is based on out-dated information.

拓展 First, on the question of advertising production, the professor thinks the reading's argument is based on biased information.

Second, on the question of x, the professor finds the reading's argument inadequate. 其次，在.....问题上，教授觉得阅读短文里的论据不充分。

Second, on the question of cost, the professor finds the reading's argument inadequate.

拓展 Second, on the question of quality, the professor finds the reading's argument inadequate.

He thinks it is more important to consider x 他认为考虑.....更为重要

He thinks it is more important to consider the effectiveness of advertising.

拓展 He thinks it is more important to consider the overall impact of the commercial.

To support his view, he says people consider x to be more ADJECTIVE and tend to VERB 为了证实自己的观点，他说人们.....

To support his view, he says people consider TV advertising to be more believable and tend to respect companies that advertise on TV.

拓展 To support his view, he says people consider what is said on television to be more believable and tend to buy things they see there.

Finally, the professor attacks the reading's assertion that... 最后，教授抨击了阅读短文里.....的断言

Finally, the professor attacks the reading's assertion that listeners pay attention to contents of radio advertising.

拓展 Finally, the professor attacks the reading's assertion that radio listeners believe what they hear on radio programs.

He also points out that..., causing x to VERB 他还指出.....，致使.....

He also points out that radio stations play too much advertising, causing listeners to tune to other stations or turn off the radio.

拓展 He also points out that radio DJs talk too much, causing listeners to ignore much of what they say.

语块

-
- strategic** 战略（性）的；策略（上）的
 - good cause** 有益的事业
 - be vital for...** 对.....很关键
 - charismatic** 超凡魅力的
 - get... out** 推销，推广.....
 - in real time** 实时地
 - pay attention to** 注意
 - seamlessly** 无缝地；衔接完美地
 - advertising message** 广告讯息
 - remote radio broadcasts** 远程无线电广播
 - communication medium** 传播媒介
 - exponentially cheaper** 便宜很多
 - commercial spots** 插播广告的时间段
 - outsourcing to...** 外包给.....
 - targeted to...** 面向.....；指向.....
 - personal touch** 人情味；温情
 - customer segments** 客户细分
 - recording studios** 录音室
 - DJs** 流行音乐节目主持人

for free 免费地
run commercials 播广告
enfold 拥抱
tuned in 收听
well crafted 认真设计的
radio host 电台节目主持人
skip over 跳过，略过
airing 广播
record... on a DVR 在数码录像机上刻录.....
significant margin 大幅度
media climate 媒体境况
airtime （无线电或电视广告等节目的）广播时间
proliferation of...的增长
script development 脚本开发
cable TV stations 有线电视台
multiple shoots 各种拍摄
channeled to... 引导到.....
trapped in heavy traffic 陷入交通大拥堵
mainstream television networks 主流电视网络
promotional tool 营销工具
demographics （尤指用于市场测算的）人口统计数据
makes so much sense 非常明智的
audience profiles 观众情况图表
... simply cannot be overemphasized极其重要，再怎么强调都不为过
authoritative 权威性的；可信的
event marketing 事件营销
return on investment 投资回报
sponsor a sports event 赞助体育赛事
brand 品牌
marathon 马拉松赛跑
background noise 背景噪音
raise money for... 为.....筹资
give their full attention to... 全神贯注于.....

Exercise 2

学习了以上这些策略、实用句型、语块、高分范文和万用写作模板之后，返回去看例题。再读一遍阅读短文，然后再听一遍讲座。如果还是听不懂讲座内容，就反复多听几遍，或者参考录音原稿。然后修改你之前写的作文，或者重新写一篇作文。修改或重写作

文时，试着运用本章学到的写作技巧。完成之后，比较一下修改或重写前后的两篇作文，注意不同之处。

录音原稿1

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

(woman) Professor: In these tough economic times, companies are looking for ways to stay competitive. Of course, without advertising, it's tough for a business to survive. That's why using radio as a promotional tool makes so much sense nowadays. The advantages pointed out in the reading simply cannot be overemphasized.

Let's talk more about targeting customers. One powerful way that companies can benefit through radio advertising is by doing event marketing. For example, a company can sponsor a sports event, like a marathon, to raise money for a good cause. A charismatic DJ broadcasts the race in real time, holding interviews and seamlessly inserting messages about the host company. Remote radio broadcasts on the event day generate excitement, and the company can only benefit.

As for development and production costs, radio advertising is exponentially cheaper than TV. Why is that? For one thing, there are fewer people involved in developing and producing the spots. For small businesses, the advertising script is often written and recorded by staff who work for the company. That's not only less expensive than outsourcing to a media company—it gives the commercial a personal touch. Furthermore, when local companies buy airtime, radio stations will often let them use their recording studios for free.

And let's not forget about how radio can enfold the listener so that he or she truly focuses on the message. Sure, radio is limited to sound, but this can be used to an advantage, if the message is well crafted. And quite frankly, listeners are more likely to listen to radio commercials than TV commercials. Nowadays, there are many software programs that let television viewers skip over commercials when they record them on a DVR. So many people record televisions for later viewing, and those people might very well never hear the commercials that were aired.

录音原稿2

Narrator: Now listen to part of a lecture on the same topic.

(man) Professor: Of course, there is always the option to advertise on the radio. But the points made in the reading passage are not really accurate when you look at today's media climate.

For instance, the claim that radio spots better target potential customers. While that used to be true, with the proliferation of cable TV stations and the integration of television with mobile phones, TV content—including TV advertising—is increasingly channeled to the right customer segment. And even mainstream television networks, which have broad demographics, have programs with known

audience profiles. If you know the ratings of a TV program and its demographics, you can air your advertisement at certain times and target your message to that viewer audience.

And how about the cost of TV advertising? Production costs and airtime are indeed high. But studies have shown that the public considers the messages presented on television more authoritative than those presented on the radio. That means the message will be more influential. A company that advertises on TV has a better chance of having its brand remembered and respected. So the return on investment for a television commercial will be high, since large numbers of people will walk away talking about the product and the brand.

Finally, it's simply not true that radio listeners always focus carefully on the advertisement message. In fact, radio is often heard as "background noise" which people don't really process. And because radio stations often play commercial after commercial, listeners can easily become annoyed. After a while, these ads can cause the listeners to change the channel or even turn off the radio. This happens less often on television, where people tend to give their full attention to the program they are watching—whether it is drama, musical entertainment or news.

Task 2 Independent Writing

第二题 独立写作全解

〔 题目形式 〕

独立写作题的格式基本上和老托福写作题相同。

独立写作题的题型是：有一个大概两到三句话的题目要求，要求考生就既定话题谈论自己的看法。一些话题是私人话题，涉及考生或考生的家庭；其他话题的范围更大一些，诸如教育或住房这类文化和社会问题。题目要求分论点必须要充分展开，表述清晰。考生有30分钟的构思和写作时间。30分钟后，系统会自动保存文章。

〔 独立写作题的话题 〕

ETS资料表明，新托福考试独立写作部分的许多话题和老托福非常相似。《托福考试官方指南》公布了200个真题话题，这在其他地方也很容易看到。这些写作题的措辞会有微小改动，但基本上都是要求考生agree or disagree（同意或者反对）、compare and contrast（对比和对照）相关观点或看法。经常会出现新题目，所以考生要做好各种准备。

有趣的是，新托福考试口语第二题中出现的许多题目也会出现在独立写作题中，只是会有一些微小的改动。因此，在复习独立写作题时，考生可以利用口语第二题中的题目；反之亦然。

〔 独立写作题的八类题型 〕

任何人都不大可能押中写作题。但是只要了解了独立写作题的特点，考生看到作文题目的时候便可以迅速抓住题目的核心，信心十足地开始写。基于其题目中的措辞和逻辑，每一道独立写作题都可以归入一个“语境框架”下。这些语境框架就像地图，可以告诉考生应该写什么内容以及如何构思。

独立写作题可以分为八个语境框架（可以理解为八类题型）。根据它们在考试中出现频率高低来排序的话，是以下八种：

1 · Choose one from two: Do you agree or disagree / Do you support or oppose

二选一题型1

2 · Choose one from two: Either x or y, which do you choose / Some people prefer x, others prefer y

二选一题型2

3 · Explicit compare and contrast / Advantages and disadvantages

“比较与对比”和“利弊”题型

4 · "What"

What题型

5 · "Why"

Why题型

6 · "How"

How题型

7 · Hypothetical "if"

假设性题型

8 · Open-ended describe and discuss

开放型题型

每一种题型，本书都将会用一章的篇幅来讲解，告诉考生如何根据每一种题型的语言和逻辑要求写出优秀的作文。

〔独立写作题如何评分？〕

独立写作题的评分准则比综合写作题的评分准则更重视话题的展开和连贯性。这是因为在独立写作题中，考生无从获得阅读短文和讲座设定好的结构和内容。更确切地说，考生必须写出全新的内容，把几个观点串联起来。

考生的作文同时由评分人和自动评分软件来评分。每篇作文由几个评分人评阅，然后决定作文的分数。

〔独立写作题如何拿到高分？〕

ETS告诉考生，作文的字数应不少于300词。当然，如果超过300词也不会扣分。在我看来，300~400词是个合适的长度。但许多考生认为作文写得长就可以让评分者给他们打高分，所以他们经常翻来覆去地重复一个观点，千方百计地写成长文章。这并不是明智之举。ETS的评分人不会去数作文的字数，而且作文长度也不是高分的标准。

要想作文得高分，需要做到：

- 1 · 结构清晰
- 2 · 观点明确
- 3 · 语法大部分正确
- 4 · 句式丰富

在给独立作文评分时，评分人看的是内容的展开、篇章结构和语言运用。但评分人是根据整体来评分，并不会专门针对这三个方面单独评分。评分人看整篇作文，如果一篇作文在某个方面欠佳，他们会留意，但在打分时会综合考虑其他因素。

就内容的展开而言，考生需要有恰当的论据和例子用来论证论点。清晰和准确的写作思路至关重要。具体、有针对性的例子是加分点！

就篇章结构而言，考生的作文要有连贯性，衔接得当。加入First和Second这样的语篇叙述特征会有帮助，但这些尚不足以让考生取得高分。考生还需要做到句与句、前后观点之间紧密连接，并且观点要表达得非常流畅。

就语言的运用而言，考生需要有很强的对词汇及语法结构的把握能力。这并不是说你要用上花哨的GRE词汇；也不是让你机械地设计10个不同的句式结构。评分人当然不会那样做，他们看的是整体的多样性。因此，考生只需多写些不同类型的复杂句式，用词要自然、流畅。

考生应给出自己的观点和例子。参加新托福考试的人很多，久而久之，模仿的痕迹暴露无遗。如果评分人或评分软件发现很多作文里都有大量抄袭的花哨语言，他们自然不会给这些作文打高分。如果模仿情节严重，他们甚至会要求考生重考。评分人每天都会看到

很多背模板的作文，因此，一定不要一字不落地背作文模板。写作个人化很关键。

让人欣慰的是，在新托福写作考试中，即使考生在语法、用词和拼写上出现几个小错误，并不影响得高分。这样的要求让考生的压力小一些。

9 Choose one from two: Do you agree or disagree Do you support or oppose

如何应对二选一题型1

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 独立写作题如何构思
 - 独立写作题如何设定最理想的篇章结构
- 解读常考题

独立写作题的第一种题型是二选一：Do you agree or disagree； do you support or oppose。顾名思义，“二选一题型”就是给考生两个具体的选择，要求他们从中选择一个。在新托福写作题的八类题型中，有两种“二选一”题。第一种是目前出现频率最高的：Do you agree or disagree with the following statement？然后给出一个陈述。

另外一种是先陈述一件事，然后问：Do you support or oppose this [policy, rule, etc.]? 这种题很容易辨别，因为它可以用yes或no来回答。

现在先来看看第一类“二选一题型”的例子。

苏珊举例

Directions:

Read the question below. You have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, an effective response will contain a minimum of 300 words.

Do you agree or disagree with the following statement?

Students are influenced more by their teachers than they are by their classmates.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

这道写作题要求考生回答学生受老师的影响多一些，还是受同学的影响多一些。简化一下题目就是：Do teachers influence students more?简单的答案是：Yes, they are influenced more.这是肯定原说法。另一个合乎逻辑的回答是：No, students are influenced more by their classmates.这个回答否定了原说法。当然，考生讨论这个话题也可以分情况来处理。从下面的高分范文和万用写作模板可以看到处理方法。我们会发现，只有运用相对高的语言技能，才能得到高分，但如果处理得好，这种Do you agree or disagree / do you support or oppose 话题是可以写出非常优秀的作文的。

Exercise 1

根据上面例题的题目要求写一篇作文。初稿完成后，继续学习下部分的内容。仔细阅读高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

高分范文

All creatures on earth have to learn skills that allow them to compete and stake out a place for themselves in their environment. Humankind is no exception. Our first lessons are taught to us by our parents. However, as we grow older, more people come into our life and we start to learn from them. From the people who surround us, we can absorb new knowledge and skills, but we also develop values and character. In this regard, teachers and classmates can influence us. Generally speaking, I agree that teachers and other authoritative figures influence students more. However, there are a number of factors at play, as I shall discuss below.

One of these factors is a student's age. Young children tend to be very curious. They ask a lot of questions, and they also are very **observant** (善于观察的). At certain stages of child development, children will consciously **model themselves after** (仿效) people they look up to, usually their parents. In high school and college, young people have developed a stronger sense of self, but they are still looking for **role models** (榜样). Although we are influenced by our peers, **deep down inside** (内心深处) we have a natural tendency to learn from and be influenced by people we perceive to be authoritative or respectable because we want to become like them when we go out into society. This is one reason why teachers have more influence over us than classmates do.

Obviously, what is said above **presupposes** (以.....为先决条件；预先假定) that we spend an equal amount of time with both teachers and classmates. In reality, a person might spend so little time with his or her teachers that most of the influence comes from classmates or friends. A typical example of this phenomenon is a troubled student who spends considerable time with classmates who don't study or who lack **moral fiber** (道德品质). Thus, time is another important factor in determining the source of a young person's influence.

In sum, I think most of us are influenced more by our teachers than by classmates because we **gravitate**, consciously or subconsciously, **towards** (受.....吸引) people of authority. From infancy we look for role models to help us do well in society. This principle will **hold true** (适用，有效) unless there are unusual factors such as time or **negative social settings** (不良的社会环境).

万用写作模板

〔在文章开头，用两三个句子交代背景信息〕. Generally speaking, I agree that _____. However, there are a number of factors at play, as I shall discuss below.

One of these factors is _____. 〔用两三个句子解释第一个因素，为总论点提供论据〕. This is one reason why _____.

Obviously, what is said above presupposes that we 〔承认总论点不成立的一两个要素或情况〕. In reality, 〔解释前一句〕. A typical example of this phenomenon is _____. Thus, _____ is another important factor in _____.

In sum, I think most of us 〔改述总论点〕_____ because we 〔改述理由〕. This principle will hold true unless there are unusual factors such as 〔提及例外情况〕 or 〔提及例外情况〕.

★ 赋能技能 宏观篇章技能：独立写作题的构思和篇章结构

1· 完成独立写作题的三个简单步骤

- 1) 先识别题型（即语境框架），弄清题目的逻辑，构思几分钟之后，列表或提纲。
- 2) 不要考虑语法和拼写，迅速写下初稿。重点关注观点和行文的流畅性。可以多写一些，甚至超过题目要求的字数。留出检查作文的时间。
- 3) 修改初稿，删去错误和重复的短语，确保文章衔接自然、前后连贯。需要说明的是，独立写作题得高分的关键之一便是文章观点明确，论据（例子或原因）充足。

2· 构思步骤

进行写作构思时，考生要先定下来自己是赞同还是反对写作题中的论点。在上面这篇例文中，该考生赞同“老师对学生的影响大”这一观点，但也谈到了例外情况：和同学相处的时间长了，有些学生受同学的影响会多一些。

构思时，考生可以写下老师更有影响力的原因：

Good teachers
Authority, respectability
Role model
Time spent
Experience
Student clubs
Age of the student

不一定非要很有条理地写下这些观点。为了节省时间，最好用缩写形式。构思时最先出现的想法应该快速用英语写下来，以便于迅速扩展思路形成一篇完整的文章，这是文字处理的好处之一。然后，列提纲时，选择你想要侧重的两个或三个方面。

高分范文选择的论述点是上述加粗的部分。一些点可以安排在第一段；其他则可以作为分论点。在实际写作中，考生可以不提列出来的有些点，选择自己想要用的观点或短语就可以。在构思过程中，如果考生想不出足够多的例子来支持自己的立场（agree），那么可以试着从相反立场（disagree）来写。

3· 独立写作题最理想的篇章结构

一篇文章的理想开头会用一个有趣的句子介绍话题，设定基调。在作文第一段，考生应该紧扣作文题提出鲜明的观点。以上面这道写作题为例，考生的陈述应该明确表明赞同或否定该论述。

第一段落之后，应该有两到三段的论证段落。论证可以是真人轶事、事实或其他形式的逻辑论证，但必须紧扣作文主题，这样文章才有“统一性”和“连贯性”。考生需把分论点分成几个段落。通过连词、重复的关键词、指示词和逻辑使文章做到衔接自然、前后连贯。

最后，考生改述论点作为文章的结论。

4· 写作时间分配

因为许多考生担心30分钟写不完作文，所以他们看完题就马上动手写，希望一落笔就有观点出现在脑海中。如果这样的话，考生会遇到“写作障碍”，即考生想不到足够多的典型例子或原因。这就是我强调考生要花几分钟去构思的原因。

那么，在写作过程中如何做好时间分配呢？

步骤	做什么	时间分配
1	理解题目	1/2 minute
2	构思	2 minutes
3	列提纲	1/2 minute
4	写作文	20 minutes
5	检查和修改	7 minutes

5· 从哪个角度去检查和修改作文

修改和润色文章时，要检查短语和句子的流畅性，确保使用的连接词恰当。同时也要检查前后连贯性，确保每一句的观点符合前后逻辑，没有逻辑上的漏洞。

同时考生需要修改语法错误。每一个考生都有可能出某类错误，最常见的错误如下所示：

托福考生作文中常见错误	
1	第三人称单数形式的动词应该有 “s” 如：He supports me.
2	性别前后不一致 I am grateful to my mother because he always helps me. ✕
3	主谓一致错误 He like to go swimming. ✕ He likes to go swimming. ✓
4	时态错误（如果讲一个故事作为例子，整个故事都要用一般过去时。）
5	单复数错误 People need many informations in the modern world. ✕ People need much information in the modern world. ✓
6	分词作形容词表示主动和被动错误 We are interesting in him because he is an interested person. ✕ We are interested in him because he is an interesting person. ✓
7	定冠词和不定冠词混淆 The good health is a blessing. ✕ Good health is a blessing. ✓
8	间距与缩进问题（段与段之间空一行，段首缩进五个字母的空格，这种形式会使文章一目了然。）
9	标点符号错误（比如英文逗号的用法，应该是标在词汇的最后一个字母后，与下一个单词空一个字符。）

- 要想写出一篇出色的文章，可运用以下策略：
 - 1· 考试前，多练习打字，熟练的打字能力有利于在电脑上写作。
 - 2· 考试时，认真看题目要求，弄清题目意思。确定该题目是什么题型（即语境框架）之后，再根据题型来运用不同的写作策略。
 - 3· 用一两分钟时间构思，写下一个简短的提纲。提纲可以写在纸上，也可以写在电脑上。
 - 4· 在第一段迅速写下一个论点。接下来，写第一个分论点的段落（第二段）。至少需要写两个分论点段落作为文章的主体。然后写一段简短的结尾段。最后，返回去完成第一段并开始修改和润色。
 - 5· 初稿可以多写，修改时再根据逻辑删掉一些内容。
 - 6· 如果考生套用模板，那么作文内容一定要个性化，不要简单地抄写他人的作文。评分人和评分软件都有可能会识破。
 - 7· 写作思路展开之后，一定要围绕中心论点来写。不要漫谈或偏离主题。
 - 8· 考试时不要尝试以高于自己真实能力的语言水平写作。要使用自己惯用的语言，这样写出来的观点才易于理解并且更“个性化”。

- 9 · 不要在文章主体部分一再重复论点。结论部分可以重复论点，但应该用别的词汇改述。
- 10 · 想做大改动前要先看时间。除非有足够的时间，不然不要对作文进行大改动。

建立自己的写作句型库

Generally speaking, I agree that x influence students more. 总的来说，我认同.....

Generally speaking, I agree that teachers and other authoritative figures influence students more.

拓展 Generally speaking, I agree that our friends influence us more.

However, there are a number of x at play, as I shall discuss below. 但是有许多.....在起作用，我会在下面讨论。

However, there are a number of factors at play, as I shall discuss below.

拓展 However, there are several circumstances at play, as I shall discuss below.

One of these factors is x. 其中一个因素是.....

One of these factors is a student's age.

拓展 One of these factors is time.

This is one reason why x have more influence over us than y 这是.....比.....对我们更有影响力的一个原因

This is one reason why teachers have more influence over us than classmates do.

拓展 This is one reason why parents have more influence over us than teachers do.

Obviously, what is said above presupposes that... 显然，上面所说的先决条件是.....

Obviously, what is said above presupposes that we spend an equal amount of time with both teachers and classmates.

In sum, I think most of us are influenced more by x than by y because we... 总而言之，我认为我们大部分人受.....影响比受.....的影响多一些

In sum, I think most of us are influenced more by our teachers than by classmates because we gravitate, consciously or subconsciously, towards people of authority.

拓展 In sum, I think most of us are motivated more by grades than by a desire to learn.

Exercise 2

学完高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的技能修改你的初稿，并认真看修改之处。然后用学到的新句型去练习下面五道预测题的写作。

写作预测题

1 · Do you agree or disagree...

Do you agree or disagree with the following statement?

Rich people who do not work will be unhappy.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思（粗体条目是高分范文中用到的。）

Rich people profile
Millionaires
Rich have nothing to worry about
Can spend time with grandchildren
The need to feel useful
Maslow （美国心理学家马斯洛）
Idle rich = boredom
May think they can do anything

高分范文1

Because I am not rich, I cannot be sure whether rich people will ever be unhappy. Most people work hard all their lives to make some money and have a better quality of life. One would think that, if we reach our goal of accumulating a little money or even exceed our goal by **amassing a great fortune**（积累巨额财富）, we will live very happy lives. This said, my guess is that wealthy people will not be happy if they do not work. Let me **elaborate**（详细阐述）.

First, all humans have needs, from physiological needs to self-actualization. Most of us are familiar with them as defined by the psychologist Maslow. While his **arrangement of needs in a hierarchy**（需求层次的排列） is controversial, most people would agree that work is the thing that can satisfy the most needs. Consequently, when a person is deprived of work, his or her needs will no longer be met. The person will then probably become unhappy.

Second, all play and no work is boring. When we have too much of one thing, we get bored. One may say they can try to create variety by pursuing different leisure activities such as playing cards and golf. But play is play; the nature of leisure activity is the same, no matter what form it takes. After a while, boredom **sets in**（产生，到来）. A bored person cannot be a happy person.

The third factor that might be responsible for unhappiness is that **wealth breeds trouble**（财富带来烦恼）. Many of today's rich have become wealthy by building successful businesses. In the process of battling their competitors or leading their subordinates at work, these individuals become accustomed to the use of power. As a result, many of them develop a **bloated ego**（膨胀的自我） and think they can get anything they **set their eyes on**（看见）. If they stop working, they might use their power and wealth in pursuit of the wrong things. You only need to read the **tabloids**（通俗小报） to see the kind of trouble that the idle rich can get into.

To summarize, work is vital to our health and wellbeing. It gives our life purpose and meaning, which helps us be content, regardless of how much money we have. Without work, even rich people will sense that something is missing and feel unhappy.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生对不工作的富人是否快乐谈谈自己的观点。这篇范文的第一段非常吸引人。考生说因为自己不是富人，所以不知道不工作的富人是不是快乐。但接下来考

生说有人认为通过一点一点的财富积累达到自己的人生目标是快乐的，根据这种说法，自己猜测如果富人不工作就不会快乐。然后，从第二至第四段，考生阐述了富人可能不快乐的原因。

在第二段，考生提到美国著名的心理学家马斯洛（Maslow）。马斯洛曾提出过需求层次理论，文中考生引用了此理论，但并没有展开。

2 · Do you agree or disagree...

Do you agree or disagree with this statement?

Nowadays the extended family (grandparents, cousins, aunts and uncles) is less significant than it was in previous times.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

Ext vs. nuclear family

Nowadays can talk to family by phone

Fight when under one roof

Industrial Age

Chinese culture

Division of labor

Insurance systems

高分范文2

Across different cultures, society follows a common pattern. When the means of production changes, it brings with it changes in society. A family is an organizational unit in society; therefore, it is subject to change when the structure of society changes. Without a doubt, the extended family in most developing countries has lost much of the importance it had in an earlier age.

Before the Industrial Revolution, production was generally small-scale and agriculture was **considerably**（非常，相当） more important than other industries. Families usually supplied the labor required by small businesses and family farms. A larger family was thus more advantageous in such an environment. With the Industrial Revolution came a new means of production which required the establishment of large businesses. As these large businesses gradually replaced the small businesses, people would leave their hometowns in search of work. As a result, families were broken up. Members of a family would relocate to different cities where the factories were located, and a new and smaller family, the **nuclear family**（小家庭）, was born.

At the same time, the nature of work changed. Some of the most important work traditionally done by the extended family is now handled by service workers. For example, rearing the young and caring for the old used to be done by family members. Uncles and aunts would **pitch in to help**（协力相助） raise young children, and it was unthinkable to have old parents live apart from their adult children. Nowadays, it is not uncommon to send children to childcare centers and old parents to senior homes.

Yet another factor that has diminished the importance of the extended family is the insurance systems common in many countries. In the past, when a person was struck with a financial crisis such as a bodily injury that required lengthy care, members of the extended family would often help. Now, more often than not, medical insurance takes care of this.

As we can see from the above, new ways of production and the establishment of new institutions typical of the market economy have brought profound changes to human societies. The importance of the extended family has been greatly diminished in the process. We currently live in a world where we increasingly rely on commercial, social and governmental institutions rather than the extended family.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生就当今社会大家庭的作用表明自己的看法。考生要么选择赞同观点：Yes, the extended family is less important.要么持否定观点，认为大家庭和以前同样重要（或者更重要）。高分范文用的是经典五段论里面的历史方法。第二至第四段分别从社会和经济发展的角度来论证，认为生产方式的改变使大家庭的重要程度降低了。注意，考生并没有直接引用题目里的用语，说：I agree that the extended family is less significant nowadays.而是用巧妙的方式表达了相同的意思：Without a doubt, the extended family in most developing countries has lost much of the importance it had in an earlier age.在总结段，考生通过改述再次强调了论点：The importance of the extended family has been greatly diminished in the process.这种写作手法非常吸引评分人。

3 · Do you agree or disagree...

It is often said that it is unwise to borrow money from a friend since the friendship can be damaged. Do you agree? Why or why not?

Use reasons and specific examples to explain your answer.

写作构思

Demise of a friendship

Difficult to say no

Friend in need is friend indeed

Really in need?

Limited amount of cash

Examples of friendship destroyed

高分范文3

Borrowing money from a friend is something that I would never do. In fact, if a friend ever wants to borrow money from me, he had better have **a compelling reason** (令人信服的理由). **I am relieved to say** (我可以很宽慰地说) I don't think any of my friends would even attempt to ask me for money. Money borrowing is one of the most often cited causes for the **demise of a friendship** (友谊终止).

We live in a modern society where the lending and borrowing of money is facilitated by large institutions catering to the needs of businesses and individuals. As long as a person is **credit-worthy** (信誉良好的) and has the ability to **repay a loan** (偿还借款), he or she can generally borrow money from a financial institution. Thus, there is really no need to borrow from one's friends unless you are not able to meet the bank's lending requirements.

Stories abound about (关于.....的故事举不胜举) how friendships were ruined because of borrowing. In a typical situation, the friend who has borrowed money cannot keep his or her promise to repay the money. At first, the debtor will try to provide excuses. Familiar excuses include "I thought I was going to receive a sum of money this month," "My friend owes me some money and he did not pay me back," or "My mother got sick." **As time drags on** (随着时间的拖延), the debtor will get comfortable with the idea of not repaying the loan—angering his **creditor** (债权人) friend in the process. Or, the borrower may feel guilty and start avoiding the creditor friend. At this point, the friendship between the two is basically destroyed.

With the exception of emergencies (除了紧急情况之外), most problems of borrowing stem from the lack of discipline on the part of the borrower. If one **abides by the principle of living within one's means** (遵照量入为出的原则), there is little need for borrowing from a friend. However, once the borrower starts to think he or she can take advantage of the friendship, trouble is on its way. The relationship is likely to become damaged or totally destroyed.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生针对借钱给朋友好不好这一问题谈谈自己的看法。第一段，考生提出自己鲜明的观点：**Borrowing money from a friend is something that I would never do.**第二段谈现代人可以从金融机构贷款，没有必要向朋友借钱。第三段举例说明朋友之间借钱会出现的结局。总结段重复了之前段落观点，指出导致很多友谊破裂的主要原因是借钱的一方缺乏自律。

4 · Do you support or oppose...

In many countries, people are no longer permitted to smoke in public places and places of work. Do you support or oppose this rule?

Use specific reasons and details to support your position.

写作构思

People don't really obey smoking rules

Damage to health

Dedicated "smoking sheds"

Freedom and equality

Children and second-hand smoking

Define public place

Rights of business owners

高分范文4

The destructive effects of smoking on our health have been thoroughly researched and proven **beyond any doubt**（毫无疑问地）. Second-hand smoke likewise has been well studied and is clearly just as harmful to non-smokers as it is to smokers themselves. There is no argument here; both opponents and proponents of a smoking ban in public places agree that smoking is bad for health. Nevertheless, I find the rule to ban smoking in public places problematic. Once we start **arbitrarily setting rules**（任意地制定规则） to ban things, where will we stop? **Alcoholic beverages**（酒精饮料）? Fast foods? This does not seem like a coherent way to set policy.

To make a fair rule, we need to find a way to balance the rights of smokers and non-smokers. Traditionally, non-smokers have felt their rights to clean air have been **trampled**（践踏，无视） by the smokers. Assume you are not a smoker. If you went to a famous restaurant, only to find the room is filled with cigarette smoke, wouldn't you be annoyed? Wouldn't you want all those smokers to put out their cigarettes? When there is no ban on smoking in restaurants, the rights of the smokers are protected. But this is not fair to non-smokers.

Perhaps the best way to resolve the issue is to make sure that, as part of the smoking ban rule, there is a far way to define "public place." For example, is a restaurant considered a public place? Isn't it more reasonable to consider privately owned restaurants "private establishments"? Moreover, if we include private businesses in the "public" category, aren't we trampling on the property rights of business owners? My own feeling is that we should not **encroach upon**（侵犯） business owners' rights; that is to say, we should exclude private businesses from the ban. This way, restaurant owners and other private establishments will have the freedom to choose what kind of **clientele**（顾客） to serve. I'm fairly confident there will always be "smoke-free" places for non-smokers to enjoy.

In summary, I agree that we should **institute a ban on**（制定.....的禁令） smoking in truly public places; however, we have to be careful not to define "public" too broadly. In my opinion, public places should include government properties and office buildings, but not private bars and restaurants.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生就公共场合禁烟这条法规表达自己的观点。这篇范文开篇即承认吸烟有害健康。但是，公共场合禁烟的这条法规有问题。然后，第二段指出禁烟问题成为平衡吸烟者和不吸烟者权利的问题。不吸烟者一直处于不利地位。第三段提到，解决这个问题得看怎么界定“公共场所”，如果公共场合禁烟令范围过于广泛，那么就侵犯了私人企业的权利。考生在总结段提出自己的观点：公共场合禁烟是一件好事，但公共场合不应包含私人酒吧和私人饭店。

5 · 需要回答 "yes / no" 的题目：

When famous people such as actors, athletes and pop stars give their opinions, many people listen. Do you think we should pay attention to these opinions?

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

- Jackie Chan
- We are persuaded by people we like
- Celebrity advertising
- Promote a movie
- Charity causes

高分范文5

Celebrities are everywhere nowadays. They dominate the media, and so when they speak, we listen. Actors use their fame to extol (赞美，宣扬) the virtues of products; professional athletes speak out to galvanize (激起，引起) support for a social cause. It is easy for these famous people to gain our attention; however, it is not easy to persuade us. This is a good thing, because we should be able to form our own opinions.

Furthermore, more often than not (往往，通常), famous people on television aren't even saying what they really think. It is no secret that companies often pay hefty sums to (支付巨额.....) engage a celebrity to endorse (为.....产品做广告) their products. In advertisements the opinions expressed by these celebrities are literally "bought" opinions. Consequently, we cannot assign any weight to such opinions.

In addition, celebrities are surrounded by people who are trying to manage their image. Publicists and agents create media opportunities so the celebrity they represent looks good to the public. They manufacture opportunities for celebrities to make comments. Yet these "opinions" are scripted in advance and made as part of a PR effort, to promote a movie or a sports event.

With the above said, it is true that many celebrities give time and money to charity. Some famous people raise funds for medical research to help cure certain diseases. If we wanted to be cynical, we could say they do this just for the image. However, it seems that some actors and athletes actually believe in the causes they represent. One famous example is the actor Paul Newman, who with his wife, created many foundations and has given hundreds of millions of dollars to charity. In cases like these, "Actions speak louder than words (行胜于言；说得好不如做得好)." We can be influenced by the opinions of Paul Newman because of his generosity.

In general, however, we should not pay too much attention to what celebrities say. Actors and sports stars may have strong

emotional appeal to us, but much of what they say is driven by business and PR concerns. **Substituting** (替换) their opinions for our independent thinking does not seem like a wise thing to do.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生对是否应该重视名人的观点表达自己的想法。文章第一段提到，名人占据了媒体，他们说什么，大家都听着。考生的观点是：No, we should not pay attention to their opinions; we should form our own.第二段以名人代言产品作为例子，说明我们不必认真对待名人的观点。第三段承认也有例外情况；例如，那些真正做慈善事业的名人，他们的观点代表自己的心声。总结段改述论点，重述我们不应该受名人观点的影响。

建立自己的写作句型库

Because I am not x, I cannot be sure whether... 因为我不.....，所以我不确定.....

Because I am not rich, I cannot be sure whether rich people will ever be unhappy.

拓展 Because I am not a technology expert, I cannot be sure whether technology nowadays is creating a common culture.

One would think that, if we VERB, we will live very happy lives. 有人会认为，如果我们.....，我们就能过上幸福的生活。

One would think that, if we reach our goal of accumulating a little money or even exceed our goal by amassing a great fortune, we will live very happy lives.

拓展 One would think that, if we have a strong family, we will live very happy lives.

This said, my guess is that x will not VERB if they do not VERB 根据这种说法，我猜测.....

This said, my guess is that wealthy people will not be happy if they do not work.

拓展 This said, my guess is that intelligent people will not become teachers if they do not get paid much.

A(n) x person cannot be a happy person.的人不可能快乐。

A bored person cannot be a happy person.

拓展 A lazy person cannot be a happy person.

The third factor that might be responsible for x is that...的第三个相关因素可能是.....

The third factor that might be responsible for unhappiness is that wealth breeds trouble.

拓展 The third factor that might be responsible for poor customer service is that complaints are not clearly explained.

To summarize, x is vital to our y 总而言之，.....对.....很关键

To summarize, work is vital to our health and wellbeing.

拓展 To summarize, diverse courses are vital to our undergraduate education.

Without a doubt, x in most developing countries has VERBed 毫无疑问，发展中国家的.....

Without a doubt, the extended family in most developing countries has lost much of the importance it had in an earlier age.

拓展 Without a doubt, economic growth in most developing countries has been a priority.

x was thus more advantageous in such an environment. 在这种环境里，.....更有优势。

A larger family was thus more advantageous in such an environment.

拓展 **Economies of scale**（规模经济）were thus more advantageous in such an environment.

Nowadays, it is not uncommon to VERB 当今，.....很常见

Nowadays, it is not uncommon to send children to childcare centers and old parents to senior homes.

拓展 Nowadays, it is not uncommon to wear stylish designer clothes.

The importance of x has been greatly diminished in the process. 在这一过程中，.....的重要性骤减。

The importance of the extended family has been greatly diminished in the process.

拓展 The importance of the Humanities has been greatly diminished in the process.

VERBing is something that I would never do. 我从来不做.....

Borrowing money from a friend is something that I would never do.

拓展 Playing video games is something that I would never do.

VERBing is one of the most often cited causes for..是人们提到最多的原因之一

Money borrowing is one of the most often cited causes for the demise of a friendship.

拓展 Burning fossil fuels is one of the most often cited causes for the demise of the environment.

Stories abound about how... 关于.....的故事举不胜举

Stories abound about how friendships were ruined because of borrowing.

拓展 Stories abound about how a good neighbor saved the life of the person next door.

Nevertheless, I find x problematic. 但是，我发现.....有问题。

Nevertheless, I find the rule to ban smoking in public places problematic.

拓展 Nevertheless, I find most television programs problematic.

In summary, I agree that we should VERB; however, we have to be careful not to VERB
总之，我赞同.....，但是我们必须.....

In summary, I agree that we should institute a ban on smoking in truly public places; however, we have to be careful not to define "public" too broadly.

拓展 In summary, I agree that we should let children spend some time learning music; however, we have to be careful not to let them neglect their studies.

Furthermore, more often than not, ... 此外，多半情况下，.....

Furthermore, more often than not, famous people on television aren't even saying what they really think.

拓展 Furthermore, more often than not, parents spoil their children.

With the above said, it is true that... 正如上述所说，确实存在.....情况
With the above said, it is true that many celebrities give time and money to charity.
拓展 With the above said, it is true that many concerts are inspiring events.

10 Choose one from two: Some people prefer x, others prefer y
Either x or y, which do you choose
如何应对二选一题型2

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何准确且有说服力地表达自己的偏爱
- 解读常考题

第二种“二选一”的题也很常见，如：

Some people prefer to [eat in restaurants], while others prefer to [eat at home]. Which do you prefer?

这类“二选一”作文题是让考生表达自己的偏爱。例如，题目会说一些人喜欢做这件事，而其他人则喜欢做别的事情。考生需要在这两件事情中挑选自己喜欢做的一件事。

除了这类表达自己个人偏爱的题目，另一种题目是either x or y，如：

Your school has enough money to buy either computers or books. Which should your school choose to buy?

这类题很容易辨别，因为它们通常会含有which或which one，要求考生二选一。换句话说，考生不需要对一个陈述表示同意或反对，而只需在两项中选择其一。当然，也可以不陈述自己的观点，只说自己不知道应该选择哪个，但这样做是有风险的。

这种作文题型的常见题目有：

- 1 · Do you **prefer** x or y?
- 2 · Which **do** you **prefer**, x or y?
- 3 · Which [of the two] **would** you **prefer**?
- 4 · **Would** you **rather** do x or y?
- 5 · **Would** you **prefer** to x or y?
- 6 · **Which** [of the two] is better?
- 7 · **Which** [of the two] is more important?

在写“偏好”或“要么……要么……”的作文时，考生要在两处说清楚自己的选择：第一段和最后一段。而在文章的主体，即分论点段落，则要解释你选择的原因。

先来看一个例子：

苏珊举例

Directions:

Read the question below. You have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, an effective response will contain a minimum of 300 words.

Some students prefer to study alone. Others prefer to study in a group. Which do you

prefer?

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

这道写作题给了考生两个选择：独立学习或者小组学习。考生可以非常简单地回答：I prefer to study alone 或I prefer to study in a group.但考生也可以这样写：I usually prefer to..., although there are times that...，然后说明例外的情况。

Exercise 1

根据上面例题的题目要求写一篇作文。初稿完成后，继续学习下部分的内容。仔细阅读高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

高分范文

写作构思

- Regular study schedule
- Discipline or lack of it
- Alone is quiet
- Questions need answering
- Perspective
- Learn more

高分范文

Studying alone certainly has its advantages. Being by yourself in your room allows you to move at your own pace and to enjoy the peace and quiet. For me, however, studying with a group of people is definitely my preference. If one is careful about including only **conscientious**（认真的，一丝不苟的） people in the group, the study experience can be surprisingly productive.

The benefits of group study all revolve around the ability for students to talk with one another about course material. One individual can ask a question, and another can answer it. When a learner talks out loud about what he or she has read in a textbook or heard in a lecture, the learner is able to reinforce the new ideas. Moreover, a motivated group can give individuals who have questions positive feedback and **moral support**（精神支持）, so that each individual keeps working hard.

In a similar vein, I like the fact that group study provides each group member with new perspectives on the course material being discussed. When I study alone, I have only one point of view on a subject. However, in a group situation, each of the participants has different perspectives. We can quickly assess each of these viewpoints and advance our own thinking in the process. This is not only an efficient way of learning, it is interesting.

Yet another reason to work in study groups is that a student is more likely to find out the best sources of information when he or she is networking with a number of people. Very often, we may think we have found some interesting articles or reference works, and

we may think these materials **suffice**（足够）. But as soon as you start asking around, your friends might have found other materials that are equally useful, if not even better. The truth is that there is a vast amount of information out there, and when you tap into a "search party" looking for specific information and good resources, you are more likely to end up with better and more up-to-date useful materials.

To summarize, there are many benefits associated with group study. Even though it is time-consuming to get everybody in the same place, overall, I think the study group experience is worth the trouble. I prefer to learn together with my friends.

万用写作模板

「你不喜欢的活动」 certainly has its advantages. 「改述不喜欢的活动」 allows you to _____ and to _____. For me, however, 「你喜欢的活动」 is definitely my preference. If one 「必要的条件」_____, the _____ experience can be surprisingly 「正面表述的形容词」.

The benefits of 「改述喜欢的活动」 all revolve around 「第一个好处」. 「用两三个句子来阐释该好处」.

In a similar vein, I like the fact that 「你喜欢的活动」 provides 「第二个好处」. 「用两三个句子来阐释该好处」. This is not only 「正面表述的形容词」, it is 「正面表述的形容词」.

Yet another reason to 「动词+你喜欢的活动」 is that 「第三个好处」. Very often, we may think_____, and we may think these _____ suffice. But_____. The truth is that 「改述第三个好处」.

To summarize, there are many benefits associated with 「你喜欢的活动」. Even though it is 「改述你喜欢的活动的不足之处」, overall, I think the 「你喜欢的活动」 is worth the trouble. I prefer to 「动词+你喜欢的活动的改述」.

在这篇范文中，考生先说独立学习有其优点，然后说自己喜欢小组学习。这种呈现形式使第一段显得非常有趣。第二至第四段分别陈述自己为什么喜欢小组学习。注意总结段，考生并没有详细复述上文提到的小组学习的利，相反，考生提到小组学习的弊——耗时（time-consuming），并改述了该活动的名称（the study group experience）。这种手法不再使文章显得繁琐单调。文章最后一句用简单且个性化的语言改述了论点，显得简洁而有力。

★ 赋能技能 微观篇章技能：表达偏爱

1 · 表达偏爱的四大规则

在新托福考试的口语和写作部分，考生必须会表达自己的偏爱。那么表达个人偏爱有没有规则可循呢？我为大家总结了四条规则。只要大家在写作过程中记住这四条规则，这

类题型便能轻松应对。

规则一：

以相对正式的方式去表述自己的偏爱。如果只是简单地写：I prefer to study alone. 评分人不会被打动。考生需要把这些句子嵌入复杂的长句中，比如： There is a lot of pressure at my school, and so in general, I prefer to study alone.

规则二：

在文中两个地方正式表明自己的偏爱：

- 1) 第一段（论点陈述）
- 2) 最后一段（改述论点）

规则三：

因为在最后一段需要用自己的语言来重述论点，所以考生要学会用不同的方式来说明同一件事情。这样不论遇到什么写作话题，都可以做到灵活运用。

表达偏爱的句式

①

- I prefer to study in groups.
- I prefer studying in groups.
- I prefer studying in groups to studying alone.
- My preference is to study in groups.
- My preference would be to study in groups.

②

- I like handmade items better.
- I like handmade items better than machine-made ones.
- My preference would be handmade items.
- Handmade items are more to my liking.
- Handmade items suit me better.
- Handmade items are more to my taste.

③

- I would rather choose my own roommate.
- I would rather choose my own roommate than have one assigned.

④

- I would prefer to live some place where the weather changes.
- I prefer to go at a slow pace instead of rushing around.
- I choose to be outdoors whenever I can.
- I tend to prefer staying in one place.
- I vastly prefer eating out, at small restaurants.
- I somewhat prefer small towns, although cities are certainly exciting places.
- Working on one project at a time is my first choice.

下面是高分范文里的两个段落，看看它们是如何表达偏爱的（表达偏爱的句式用粗体表示）。

第一段：

Studying alone certainly has its advantages. Being by yourself in your room allows you to move at your own pace and to enjoy the peace and quiet. **For me, however, studying with a group of people is definitely my preference.** If one is careful about including only conscientious people in the group, the study experience can be surprisingly productive.

最后一段总结段：

To summarize, there are many benefits associated with group study. Even though it is time-consuming to get everybody in the same place, overall, I think the study group experience is worth the trouble. **I prefer to learn together with my friends.**

注意上述两个表达偏爱的句子有什么不同。一个较长，一个较短；一个用名词 preference，另一个用动词不定式prefer to。

规则四：

另一个重要的规则是如果作文题目里有情态动词would，作文里应该用相同的情态动词。例如，一道作文题Would you prefer to live in a traditional house or in a modern apartment?考生的回答应该是：I would prefer to live in a traditional house.但如果作文题目是：Do you prefer handmade items or machine-made items? 考生应该写：I prefer handmade items.

2· 考生表达偏爱时常见的语法错误

因为表达形式多样，所以考生很难做到语法完全正确。现在来看看考生表达偏爱的句子中经常出现的一些错误以及正确的表达。用下划线画出的内容是不正确的。

考生作文中表达偏爱时常见的语法错误

有语法错误的句子	改正的句子
Given a choice, I <u>will</u> prefer to keep a pet.	Given a choice, I would prefer to keep a pet.
I <u>prefer</u> to be self-employed <u>other</u> than work for an employer.	I would prefer to be self-employed rather than work for an employer.
I would rather <u>a trip</u> to Seoul than to Tokyo.	I would rather take a trip to Seoul than to Tokyo.
I would prefer to <u>living</u> in a city.	I would prefer to live in a city.
I prefer working for a large company <u>than</u> a small one.	I would rather work for a large company than for a small one. <i>or</i> I prefer working for a large company to working for a small one.

考生尽量避免犯上述错误，记住正确的用法。

- 表达偏爱的策略：
 - 1 · 措辞和句式要正确。记住本章中表达偏爱的句式和短语。特别注意何时用不定式（prefer to VERB），何时用动名词形式（prefer VERBing）以及何时用动词原形（I would rather VERB）。
 - 2 · 表达偏爱的作文中，要有两个表达偏爱的句子，一个在第一段，另一个在最后一段。这两种句式应该有所不同。
 - 3 · 如果写作题目中包含情态动词，例如：Would you prefer to be outdoors or indoors on vacation? 作文中就应该使用相同的情态动词，即：On vacation I would prefer to stay indoors.

建立自己的写作句型库

VERBing certainly has its advantages. 可能有它的优势之处。

Studying alone certainly has its advantages.

拓展 Living in the city certainly has its advantages.

For me, however, VERBing is definitely my preference. 但我而言，我确实喜欢.....

For me, however, studying with a group of people is definitely my preference.

拓展 For me, however, working for myself is definitely my preference.

Exercise 2

学完高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的技能修改你的初稿，并认真看修改之处。然后用学到的新句型去练习下面五道预测题的写作。

写作题预测

1 · Would you prefer to x or would you prefer to y...

Some people prefer to spend their free time outside. Other people prefer to spend their free time indoors. In your leisure time, would you prefer to be outdoors or would you prefer to be inside?

Use specific reasons and examples to explain your choice.

写作构思

- Energetic personalities
- Indoors more chance to learn
- Student life**
- Stress**
- Badminton**
- Hiking**
- Exceptions**

高分范文1

As a university student, I spend most of my time indoors, taking classes and studying. These indoor activities can be very stressful, and so in the rare free time that I have, I choose to be outdoors whenever my schedule permits. No matter how busy I am, I try to find a way somehow to get fresh air.

During the week, I go to classes during the day and do homework in the evening. Still, I can usually squeeze in an outdoor activity before dinner. Sometimes, for example, I play badminton on the lawn just outside my dorm with a classmate. We hit birdies back and forth for about 45 minutes, even if the weather is cold or a little rainy. Afterwards, we feel more relaxed and can enjoy our cafeteria meal.

On weekends, when I have more time, I like to do outdoor activities like hiking and mountain climbing. Less than two hours away from Beijing by bus are many small mountains that one can climb. Not long ago I went with other members of my university's hiking club to a mountain near the Great Wall. The path was a little rough and it was hot outside, but I enjoyed looking at the scenery, and thinking about what it would have looked like thousands of years ago, when the Great Wall guards were there. By the time we got back to campus, even though we were all physically tired, we felt revitalized and ready to get back to our studies the next day.

Of course, I also have some indoor hobbies, such as reading novels and playing chess. However, during the school semester, because I spend so much time indoors, and am constantly reading books and articles for school, I don't really feel like reading during my spare time, even interesting novels. Perhaps after I finish my semester, I will change this way of thinking and do more indoor leisure activities.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生回答个人问题：In your leisure time, would you prefer to be outdoors or would you prefer to be inside?这篇范文的结构非常完整。在第一段，考生描述了自己的个人情况，提供了背景。考生是一名大学生，大部分时间都在教室和图书馆里学习，因此在业余时间，考生更喜欢户外活动。第二段和第三段分别讲述了不同时间段的活动：平时和周末。在这两段中，考生不仅描述了户外活动，还描述了自己从事这些活动的感受（第二段中more relaxed和第三段中revitalized）。因为平时和周末之间的逻辑联系，这几段的承接非常流畅。在最后一段，考生提到其他几项室内活动，先说Of course, I also...，但紧跟其后的是一个重新强调论点的论述：因为我在室内学习的时间太多，所以业余时间不太愿意再呆在室内看书（However, during the school semester, because I spend so much time indoors...）。以这种概述形式来总结非常不错。最后一句谈放假后自己的打算，这种多角度的陈述使全文的结构非常完整、紧凑。

2 · Do you prefer x or do you prefer y...

Do you prefer to work on one project till it is finished or do you prefer to work on several projects at one time?

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

- Achievement
- Loose ends
- Anxiety
- Multi-tasking
- Team projects
- Job assignments usually multiple projects

高分范文2

In the interests of (有助于) efficiency, I have tried to work on several projects simultaneously, but always found it difficult, if not impossible. I am accustomed to working on one project at a time. I don't know if I understand all the reasons why this is, but I will try to explain below.

For one thing, when I devote myself totally to one project, I can enjoy each little step I make towards its completion. I pay a lot of attention to detail and make sure I do each step correctly. In my eyes, each milestone is a small achievement. As time passes, I can see the project gradually taking shape and moving toward completion. I don't know that I would say "the process" is more important than the "outcome" of a project, but I am certainly a person who enjoys the process.

Another possible reason for my wanting to focus is that I am not very good with loose ends (未了结的部分). I become anxious when I think about several projects waiting for me to do. Even a single project takes up much of my energy, because once a project is started, I tend to think about it all the time. I reflect on (仔细想) how to resolve the problems that have already presented themselves, how to approach the next step and what I need to do in terms of further research. These are the kind of unresolved "loose ends" that I face for one open project. With multiple open projects, there would just too many issues for one person to address.

In my heart, I know that it is good to be able to "multitask," to work on several projects at the same time. For example, if you hit a roadblock with a particular project, and work on something else for a while, when you go back to the original project, a solution becomes easier. In theory, I see the logic of this approach, which is why I have tried doing several projects at once. However, perhaps because I am a perfectionist at heart, working on one project at a time is still my first choice.

苏珊评析

因为这道写作题问的是“你”(Do you prefer to work on a project...) ,所以范文中考生采用了自我反思的口吻，比如用到了如下句子：I don't know if I understand all the reasons why this is, but I will try to explain below.这种句子非常适合这类写作题。这种自我反思的口吻与客观描述不同，后者更适用于非个人问题的话题，比如关于因特网之类的社会问题。在第二段和第三段，考生从心理因素的角度陈述喜欢一次做一个项目的原因。解释详细且有说服

力。从第一段提出论点直接过渡到原因，符合独立写作题评分准则中“统一性、渐进性和连贯性”的标准。最后一段呼应第一段：尝试过同时做几个项目，但还是倾向一次做一个项目。最后一句重申论点（working on one project at a time is still my first choice）和原因（perhaps because I am a perfectionist at heart），使结尾显得生动有趣。

3 · Do you think x or do you think y...

Some people use Internet to gain information, while others think using it will lead to problems. Do you value the information on the Internet a lot or do you think the information on the Internet has problems?

写作构思

Problems with inaccurate information

Self-publishing

Traditional sources

Who has responsibility?

Smart phones with Internet link

Depends on nature of information

高分范文3

Many people criticize the Internet for having bad information. Yet one might well ask, is there any source of information that will not lead to problems? I sincerely doubt it. In fact, it is not fair to say that a random piece of information on the Internet is of poorer quality than information in newspapers, or even many books. Consequently, we should not spend energy finding fault with this or that information source. Rather, we should train information users to make sure they are not misinformed, regardless of the source. Let us look at a few examples.

In centuries past, most technical information came to us from publishing organizations. Arguably, the most reliable sources of academic information have been professional journals, where articles have to go through **blind reviews**（匿名评审） by experts in the same field. However, these publications tend to focus narrowly on new issues **at the forefront of a discipline**（在学科的最前沿）. The quality of this information is high, but the language is very technical. When reporters try to summarize these research findings, there are often **distortions**（曲解） in fact.

Indeed, for **everyday people**（普通人）, the most common source of information has traditionally been news organizations. Yet people tend to forget that print media may not be accurate either. For example, at one time in United States history, newspapers were funded by political parties and were heavily biased in their political views. It was only in the last century that major newspapers realized that maintaining a relatively unbiased position was good for business. Even so, one can still argue that most newspapers are not entirely neutral.

Of course, the Internet is somewhat unique in that it is so easy for any individual to publish information. As a result, the world wide web is filled with information that is self-published. One can access academic journals and online newspapers on the Internet; however, the vast majority of information online has not been fact-checked by news editors or reviewed by experts.

In sum, the Internet is a valuable resource, but users must remember that the quality of information published by website hosts, bloggers and forum participants can range from excellent to garbage. Consequently, an information seeker using the Internet should **exercise caution**（谨慎行事） by consulting multiple sources and checking the background of the information provider. However, this information seeker should exercise this kind of rigorous approach, no matter what the information source is.

苏珊评析

该考生以质疑写作题中的说法着手：Yet one might well ask, is there any source of information that will not lead to problems?考生用这种方式表明自己的立场——我们应该担心的不是信息源头。这一观点反复出现在第一段和最后一段。为了论证这一观点，第二段和第三段指出专业杂志和报纸等其他信息源头的问题。第四段转向因特网这一话题。考生认为因特网比较特殊，一般情况下因特网上的内容没有经过编辑和专家的审核。最后一段重申论点，即因特网是重要的信息源头，但信息使用者要明白信息是否可靠是由信息提供者决定的，所以使用因特网信息时要慎重。

4 · Which would you do...

Your school has enough money to purchase either laptops for students or books for the library. Which should your school choose to buy—computers or books?

Use specific reasons and examples to support your recommendation.

写作构思

- Uses for laptops
- Uses for books
- Personal items
- Library
- Lab computers
- Need to develop computer literacy
- Young people like computers

高分范文4

These days, the laptop computer has become a sort of personal item, similar to iPods and PDAs. Students expect to purchase their own laptops and do not need the university to provide them. Consequently, if my school had sufficient funds, it should acquire new

books for the library.

The benefit of books is vast. No wonder, then, that the library collection is one of the defining characteristics of a great institution of learning. Because it is challenging to keep up with the pace of new **scholarship** (学问，学术成就), a school should do whatever it can to continually enlarge its collection. Moreover, there are few things more inspiring to students than a richly furnished library. Who can forget the first time he or she walked into a good university library? I, **for one** (举个例子), clearly remember the awe I felt inside the large stone building filled with shelves and shelves of books. I made a vow then and there that before I graduated, I would spend a significant amount of time soaking up those books.

Granted, schools need computer facilities where students can go to do certain classroom tasks or research. Lab computers are a convenience for certain classes or for quick Internet sessions. For example, for a Fine Arts or Architecture class, the school may wish to purchase Mac laptops. In general, however, there is no real need for the university to purchase laptops now that most people have at least one laptop or tablet.

Books, on the other hand, are desperately needed to reflect ongoing scholarship in all sorts of disciplines. Reference works and professional journals are expensive, but serve as invaluable resources. In short, weighing the benefits of books versus computers, I think most people would agree that buying more books represents a better use of the available money.

苏珊评析

这道题要求考生谈谈自己学校应该为学生购买手提电脑还是购买书籍充实图书馆。可以有几种论证方法。一种是论证某种投资为什么是必要的或有价值的。第二种是论证另一项投资为什么没有必要或没有价值。在上面这篇范文中，这两种论证方法都用到了。第一段考生提出自己的观点：手提电脑是私人物品，应该由学生自己购买。按照常规逻辑，考生接下来应该说书籍是更好的投资方式。考生确实是这么做的。第二段描述图书馆藏书现实意义，列举了刚上大学时图书馆留给自己的深刻印象，自己在图书馆看过的书。第三段谈到，某些情形下应该由学校购买电脑设备，但这些是属于特殊情况。最后一段改述论点，即学校很有必要购买不同学科的展现当前学术成就的书籍。提到的工具书和专业杂志使全文的论点更为完整。

5 · Is it more important to x or to y...

Is it more important for students to understand general concepts or to learn specific facts?
Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

- What are concepts?
- How different from facts
- Need facts in order to understand concepts

高分范文5

Both general concepts and specific facts are vital to human existence; we cannot live our lives without learning them. Facts are easily memorized and can be picked up by individuals throughout their lives. Concepts, on the other hand, are more complex and are better learned in a structured and systematic environment, such as a school. This essay will demonstrate what concepts are and why learning concepts is a priority for students.

We can define concepts loosely as mental representations of what things are and how things work. Conceptual frameworks are based on facts. Let us look at an example of a concept taken from Physics. The concept of gravity states that there is an attraction force between any two objects with mass. We can learn this concept by noting several facts. I will mention just two of these. Fact one: If we let go of a ball from our hand, it will fall to the ground. Essentially, one object, the ball, is pulled toward the other object, the Earth. Fact two: The Earth can maintain a stable orbit around the Sun because the Earth's **centrifugal force**（离心力）（which would otherwise cause Earth to fly into space）is balanced by gravity（which pulls the Earth toward the Sun）. To some people, such a discussion of gravity may seem complicated and a bit difficult to comprehend. Indeed, this illustrates my point. Concepts are not easily absorbed. Learning them requires time, practice and many examples to see how the concepts can be applied.

This is why most of the fundamental concepts, especially those in basic sciences such as Physics and Chemistry, are taught in school. Yet there are other many important concepts as well; for example, concepts related to Philosophy and **Ethics**（伦理学）. We do not wait till we have finished our formal education to start studying these. **Moral concepts**（道德观念）and the ideals of the Humanities are first taught to us at home, and reinforced in elementary school and beyond.

As we can see, it is more important for students to spend time learning concepts than memorizing isolated facts. Concepts are complex and are probably more important to our success in the workplace and in life. As for facts, we should not worry too much about memorizing hundreds of them in school, because there is always time to acquire more facts later on.

苏珊评析

为了说明概念和事实哪个对学生更重要这个问题，这篇文章匠心独运，给出概念的定义，并举了一个详细的物理概念的例子。第一段先对事实和概念进行了比较。在该段最后一句，考生陈述了自己的观点，并告知读者下文接下来要讲的内容：This essay will demonstrate what concepts are and why learning concepts is a priority for students.第二段介绍了概念的定义并以重力这一概念为例。第三段讲述学校教授基础学科的原因。最后一段改述论点（As we can see, it is more important for students to spend time learning concepts than isolated facts.），并指出生活和职场中掌握概念的重要意义。

[TIME PHRASE], when I have more time, I like to do x like VERBing and VERBing. 时间充裕的话，我喜欢做.....，比如.....

On weekends, when I have more time, I like to do outdoor activities like hiking and mountain climbing.

拓展 In the evening, when I have more time, I like to do sports like swimming and running.

I don't know if I understand all the reasons why this is, but I will try to VERB below. 我不确定自己是否明白这件事的所有原因，但我会在下文中尝试.....

I don't know if I understand all the reasons why this is, but I will try to explain below.

拓展 I don't know if I understand all the reasons why this is, but I will try to give some examples below.

Another possible reason for my wanting to VERB is that I am not very good with x 我想做.....的另一个原因可能是我不太擅长.....

Another possible reason for my wanting to focus is that I am not very good with loose ends.

拓展 Another possible reason for my wanting to work for myself is that I am not very good with **bureaucracy** (官僚主义) .

In theory, I see the logic of this approach, which is why I have tried VERBing 从理论上讲，我明白这种方法的合理性，这也是我之所以尝试.....的原因

In theory, I see the logic of this approach, which is why I have tried doing several projects at once.

拓展 In theory, I see the logic of this approach, which is why I have tried spending time in a large group.

Yet one might well ask, is there any x that will not lead to problems? 但很可能有人会问，其他.....不会引发问题吗？

Yet one might well ask, is there any source of information that will not lead to problems?

拓展 Yet one might well ask, is there any means of transportation that will not lead to problems?

Of course, x is somewhat unique in that it is... 当然，因为.....，所以它有点独特

Of course, the Internet is somewhat unique in that it is so easy for any individual to publish information.

拓展 Of course, a foreign movie is somewhat unique in that it is able to take you on a distant trip.

Consequently, if my school had sufficient funds, it should VERB 因此，如果我的学校有充足的资金，它应该.....

Consequently, if my school had sufficient funds, it should acquire new books for the library.

拓展 Consequently, if my school had sufficient funds, it should invest in **state-of-the-art** (最先进的) computers.

The benefit of x is vast.大有裨益。

The benefit of books is vast.

拓展 The benefit of travel is vast.

No wonder, then, that x is one of the defining characteristics of y 那么，成为.....
的典型特征不足为奇

No wonder, then, that the library collection is one of the defining characteristics of a great institution of learning.

拓展 No wonder, then, that the ability to plan well is one of the defining characteristics of a good leader.

In general, however, there is no real need for x to VERB now that most people VERB 然而，一般来说，绝大多数人.....，对.....就没有真正需求

In general, however, there is no real need for the university to purchase laptops now that most people have at least one laptop or tablet.

拓展 In general, however, there is no real need for teachers to write on the blackboard now that most people have access to the PowerPoint notes.

In short, weighing the benefits of x versus y, I think most people would agree that VERBing x represents a better use of the available money. 总之，在权衡.....和.....的优势时，我认为绝大多数人会认同.....

In short, weighing the benefits of books versus computers, I think most people would agree that buying more books represents a better use of the available money.

拓展 In short, weighing the benefits of a museum versus a sports gymnasium, I think most people would agree that building a gymnasium represents a better use of the available money.

This essay will demonstrate what x are and why learning x is a priority for students. 本文会说明.....的概念，学生优先要学习.....的原因。

This essay will demonstrate what concepts are and why learning concepts is a priority for students.

拓展 This essay will demonstrate what the Internet is and why learning how to use the Internet is a priority for students.

As we can see, it is more important for x to spend time VERBing than VERBing 正如我们所见，花时间.....比.....花时间.....更为重要

As we can see, it is more important for students to spend time learning concepts than memorizing isolated facts.

拓展 As we can see, it is more important for teachers to spend time motivating students than giving exams.

11 **Explicit compare and contrast Advantages and disadvantages**

如何应对“比较与对比”和“利弊”题型

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何有条理地表述事物的利弊
- 解读常考题

“比较与对比”题型和“利弊”题型的相似之处在于它们都明确要求考生比较或对比两种不同的事物。题目有时要求考生比较两个事物的优点；有时要求考生比较某个事物的利弊。有些题目要求考生谈自己的观点；有时则不作要求。

要想取得这类作文题的高分，考生需要有条理地论述被比较的事物。在比较题中，不论题目要求是什么，考生都得一步一步进行有条理的比较。这类作文相对比较正式，但结构更复杂。

要求进行比较或对比的题目有多种形式，下面是出现频率最高的形式：

- 1 · **Compare the advantages of x with the advantages of y.**
- 2 · **Compare the contributions of x to society with the contributions of y to society. Which type of contribution is valued more?**
- 3 · **Compare the different kinds of x you could use to travel. Which one is best?**
- 4 · **Compare these two choices: ... Which one do you prefer?**
- 5 · **Compare your friend's two choices and explain which one you think your friend should choose.**
- 6 · **Compare the advantages of these two different ways of VERBing. Which one do you prefer?**
- 7 · **Compare the advantages and disadvantages of VERBing.**
- 8 · **Compare and contrast x [knowledge] gained from experience with x gained from books. Which is more important?**

现在看一则例子，该题明确要求考生比较事物的优点和缺点。

苏珊举例

Directions:

Read the question below. You have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, an effective response will contain a minimum of 300 words.

The government has announced that it plans to build a new multilane highway near where you live. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of living near this project. What is your view of this project? Give details to support your opinion.

这道写作题要求考生比较住在多车道公路边的利弊。考生可以写自己的个人偏爱；也

可以保持中立，给出客观的分析。但为了保证上下文的连贯，考生需要把自己提到的几方面利弊融合到作文的论点中。

Exercise 1

根据上面例题的题目要求写一篇作文。初稿完成后，继续学习下部分的内容。仔细阅读高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

高分范文

写作构思

Advantages:

- Good when region gets government money
- Can visit friends in other part of city
- Convenient if commuting to other towns
- Convenient to get to airport
- Profitable if near exit and zoning allows you to run a business—gas station or restaurant

Disadvantages:

- Encourages people to use private cars instead of subway (gridlock)
- Easier for dangerous people to come by
- Noise from cars and trucks moving at fast speeds at all hours
- Pollution from exhaust pipes
- Property values may go down if you are residential

高分范文

Cities and towns must routinely upgrade their road systems. As part of that upgrade, the road authorities in rapidly developing areas often construct multilane highways that **cut through**（穿过） or nearby the city itself. For city residents, there are advantages and disadvantages to living near a new multilane highway.

Among the benefits of living near a large highway is the convenience of being able to hop onto a main road right away, without having to spend time in local traffic. This is a distinct advantage if a person commutes by car to another town because the commuter can quickly access the highway and get going. Being near to a major highway is also very convenient when the person is going to the airport, since most highways connect to the airport highway. Finally, if one owns property on land that is near a future highway, and if **the zoning laws**（分区法规） permit **commercial establishments**（商业机构，商号），it might be possible for a person to open a restaurant or a gas station that would attract travelers.

Of course, there are significant disadvantages to having a multilane highway near one's home. The noise made at all hours of the day and night by speeding cars and trucks harms the quality of life. Even if noise walls are built along the road, the sounds are still very

annoying to residents. A related problem caused by highways is the pollution that comes from exhaust pipes and the litter that gets thrown out of moving vehicles. If a person owns a home in a residential area bordering the new highway, it is likely that the property value of that residence will go down, since no one will want to buy a home near a noisy highway.

My point of view on this issue would depend on whether I was a renter or a homeowner. If a highway was planned to run by my area where I was renting, I might not mind. The construction process for the highway would probably be a nuisance, however, and so I might choose to move away from the construction area. If, however, I owned property and a highway was planned, I would be extremely unhappy. Although the government usually pays residents when the highway goes right through where their house is, the government does not compensate a property owner if the highway is just "nearby." That would be very unfortunate.

万用写作模板

〔用两三个句子介绍背景信息〕. For 〔涉及的人〕, there are advantages and disadvantages to _____.

Among the benefits of _____ is the convenience of being able to _____, without having to _____. This is a distinct advantage if a person _____. _____ is also very convenient when the person is _____, since _____. Finally, if one _____, and if _____, it might be possible for a person to _____.

Of course, there are significant disadvantages to having _____. 〔用一个句子来陈述第一个“弊”〕. Even if 〔处理第一个“弊”的措施〕, _____ are still very annoying to 〔涉及的人〕. A related problem caused by _____ is 〔第二个“弊”〕. If a person _____, it is likely that 〔第三个“弊”〕, since _____.

My point of view on this issue would depend on whether I was _____ or _____. If _____, I might not mind. If, however, 〔一个不利因素〕, I would be extremely unhappy. 〔用一个句子来解释上面的问题〕. That would be very unfortunate.

这篇范文的开头先是多车道公路的背景信息：As part of that upgrade, the road authorities in rapidly developing areas often construct multilane highways that cut through or nearby the city itself.考生还叙述了题目要求：For city residents, there are advantages and disadvantages to living near a new multilane highway.这有助于帮助读者（评分人）理解论点的展开。这篇范文分层次来比较利和弊。第二段是第一个层次，考生列举了住在多车道公路附近的三个优势。第二个层次在第三段，考生列举了住在多车道公路附近的三个弊端。在第四段总结段，考生陈述了自己的观点：住在多车道公路附近的利弊取决于自己是房客还是房主。这一观点非常明确，评分人一看便知，因为在谈利和弊的段落中考生已经提到了公路会影响房产所有权和房产价值。

这篇范文将近400词，比较型写作题的长度通常如此，因为进行有条理的比较，其步骤相对复杂，写作时间也会长一些。

★ 赋能技能 宏观篇章技能：有条理地进行比较

1· 写作中进行有条理的比较需要三个简单的步骤

- 1) 认真阅读题目，准确理解题目要求比较的内容，看清楚题目是否要求陈述自己的观点。
- 2) 确定作文结构是用模块法还是逐点法，并列表或画图。
- 3) 先写一篇连贯的作文，包括所有的比较点，如有要求，再陈述自己的观点。

2· 进行比较的两种写作方式

比较事物的作文，如果想做到条理清晰，可以有两种组织分论点的方法：

模块法（A block approach）

逐点法（A point-by-point approach）

每一种方法都可以用来强调相同点，对比不同点或相同点。这两种方法各有优点。但新托福考试独立写作题是一篇不超过400词的文章，写作时间是30分钟，通常模块法更实用。当写作题涉及考生个人观点时，模块法更有利于写作，因为考生需要迅速涵盖各种观点以写出有说服力的总结段。

模块法

在模块法中，考生通常把所有特点都归到一个段落里。如果想强调某一论点，考生可以另起一段。下面的例子摘自上面的范文，两个“模块”分别是住在多车道公路附近的利与弊。

第一段	提出论点，陈述或暗含自己的想法。
利（第二段）	1. Quick access for commuters to other towns 2. Quick access to the airport 3. Property owners can open a restaurant or a gas station
弊（第三段）	1. Noise 2. Pollution 3. Depreciation of house value
总结段	以改述的形式重申论点。

逐点法

在逐点法中，考生选择事物的两个特点（如果时间充裕的话，可以多选一些特点）。有了这些特点才能逐一比较两个事物，每一个特点自成一段。下面的例子摘自下文预测题的第五篇范文，文中对比了虚拟网络课堂和真实课堂，两个特点是efficiency和soft skills。

第一段	提出论点，陈述或暗含自己的想法。	
	Online Virtual Lectures	Lectures in Classroom
Efficiency (第二段)	① Don't have to go to class; takes less time ② Better retention of facts due to focus	① Classes sometimes large, distracting ② Have to spend time going to class in all sorts of weather
Soft Skills (第三段)	① Not easily developed through virtual lecture ② "Hard skills" more of a strength of virtual lectures	① Interactions promote interpersonal skills, communication ② Teachers inspire students
总结段	以改述的形式重申论点。	

3 · 并列比较

不论作文运用哪种组织方法，考生一定要进行并列比较。但一些考生在进行并列比较的时候，句子会出现语法错误。最常见的错误有：

Life in the country is different from the city.
The speed of trains is faster than cars.

为了让比较并列，句子应改正为：
Life in the country is different from life in the city.
The speed of trains is faster than the speed of cars.

或者，在第二处，用that来代替：
Life in the country is different from that in the city.
The speed of trains is faster than that of cars.

- 为了使比较事物的作文显得有条理，可运用以下策略：
 - 1 · 认真阅读写作题目，知道要比较什么内容。
 - 2 · 注意是否需要给出自己的观点。
 - 3 · 确定使用模块法还是逐点法。一般而言，出于时间考虑，模块法效果更好。
 - 4 · 当考生确定自己选择的事物更具有整体优势后，直接运用模块法进行比较。如果考生想对比两件事物时，使用逐点法，但该方法比较耗费时间。
 - 5 · 迅速列出论点或特点，比如，优缺点、利弊等。
 - 6 · 要比较的事物在句式结构上是并列的。
 - 7 · 如果对比两个事物，可以先提一提相似之处，这样的表述更有说服力。
 - 8 · 在模块法中，先写不同观点，这会使下文包含同意观点的段落更有说服力。
 - 9 · 如果使用逐点法，一定不要多次重复论点。重复过多，评分人会给低分。
 - 10 · 不论使用哪种方法，结论都要简短有力，不要逐一重复所有的论据。相反，要选

择最突出的点进行总结。

建立自己的写作句型库

For x, there are advantages and disadvantages to VERBing 对于.....而言，.....有利也有弊

For city residents, there are advantages and disadvantages to living near a new multilane highway.

拓展 For commuters, there are advantages and disadvantages to having a car.

Among the benefits of x is the convenience of being able to VERB, without having to VERB的好处之一便是有.....的便利，无须.....

Among the benefits of living near a large highway is the convenience of being able to hop onto a main road right away, without having to spend time in local traffic.

拓展 Among the benefits of e-mail is the ability to give someone a message, without having to interrupt him or her.

Of course, there are significant disadvantages to having x 当然，.....也会有明显的弊端

Of course, there are significant disadvantages to having a multilane highway near one's home.

拓展 Of course, there are significant disadvantages to having a large group of tourists with you all the time.

My point of view on this issue would depend on whether I was x or y 我对此事的观点则要看我.....

My point of view on this issue would depend on whether I was a renter or a homeowner.

拓展 My point of view on this issue would depend on whether I was traveling to a city or the countryside.

Exercise 2

学完高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的技能修改你的初稿，并认真看修改之处。然后用学到的新句型去练习下面五道预测题的写作。

写作预测题

1 · Compare the advantages and disadvantages of...

There are many modes of transportation that carry people from one destination to another. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of traveling by train.

Use specific details in your discussion.

写作构思

Advantages:

Comfort

Fewer check-in, security and boarding procedures

Scenic views

Dining car

More civilized

Disadvantages:

Slow for long distances

Not possible for travel of oceans

May get seated in cars with loud people

Too bumpy

No flexibility

高分范文1

In the modern world, there are many ways to get from one place to another. All forms of transportation seek to **leverage new technologies**（利用新技术）, and rail travel is no exception. Nonetheless, like all modes of travel, train travel has advantages and disadvantages.

On the positive side, train travel is extremely comfortable compared to other forms of travel, including car and plane travel. The seats are large and passengers can get up and walk around. During long trips, if a traveler can reserve a sleeper car, it is possible to get a good night's rest. Another advantage of train travel is the relatively easy boarding procedure. Unlike train passengers, airplane passengers need to report very early and go through **lengthy security checks**（漫长的安检）.

Perhaps the best part of riding on trains is the ability to look out the windows at the scenery. Depending on the route, a train may pass through mountains, rivers and farmland. Many people think this aspect of train travel is very soothing, and even romantic.

Yet train travel is not well suited for all trips. The most obvious drawback of trains is the inability to cross large stretches of water. Although trains can travel on bridges across large rivers and even bays, there is no way to go across oceans. **Another downside to**（另一个不便之处） train travel is that it can take a very long time, especially if one is traveling a great distance. This length of time is due to the fact that trains often stop in **roundabout places**（绕道的地方）. For example, a train from New York to Chicago can take anywhere from nine hours to twenty hours, depending on the route. A plane takes less than three hours.

Additionally, one of the most annoying characteristics of train travel is the possibility of being confined in a train car with loud and **obnoxious**（令人讨厌的） people. If you are unlucky, you may end up spending hours and hours **in close proximity to**（紧挨着） some very rude people, who keep talking or singing. If this situation arises, it won't matter how comfortable the seats are or how beautiful the scenery is.

苏珊评析

和多车道公路的写作题一样，这道写作题要求考生比较火车旅行的利与弊。注意这道题没有要求考生陈述个人偏爱及原因。明确了这一点非常重要，因为考生可以集中时间在作文主体部分进行详细的比较。

2 · Compare the advantages of... with... Which would you choose?

Some students like to live on campus in dormitories, while others like to rent apartments off campus. Compare the advantages of living in a dormitory with the advantages of living in an off-campus apartment. Which would you choose? Give reasons for your preference.

写作构思

On-campus dormitory:

- Closer to classrooms; can sleep late and get to class on time
- Can eat buffets
- Cafeteria is nearby
- Being part of social events on campus
- Resident Assistant looks out for you

Off-campus apartment:

- More freedom and privacy
- Less gossip
- Can make décor cozier
- More living space for less money
- Quieter atmosphere

高分范文2

Nowadays, many college students are considering staying in housing off campus, especially at universities where dormitory space is limited. The decision is not always an easy one, since there are advantages to both dormitories and apartments.

One advantage of living in a campus dormitory is convenience. Most dorms are located very close to classroom buildings, which means students can sleep in later in the morning. They also will be able to save time and money on transportation to and from class, since they won't need a bicycle, a bus or a car. In dormitory living, meals are also more convenient as most dorms are located right next to student dining halls. Finally, students who live in dormitories, especially **underclassmen** (大学一、二年级学生), have a richer social life because dorms are **the hub of social activity** (社交活动的中心), **sponsoring** (举办, 发起) quite a few formal and informal events every week.

Yet, as mentioned above, living off campus in a rental apartment also has **perks**（好处；额外待遇）. First and foremost, the atmosphere in an apartment is quite calm. There are fewer people coming and going; this allows a student to have more privacy. Moreover, because there are fewer interruptions, students can focus on their reading and their term papers, and so can be very efficient.

My personal choice would be to live in a university dormitory during my freshman year, and to live off campus in an apartment from my second year on. That way, I could make many new friends in the dormitory, not have to worry about cooking meals and become familiar with university activities. Then, for the next three years, I would rent an inexpensive apartment with a few classmates. Hopefully, the apartment would not be too far away from my classrooms; otherwise, I would have to use my bicycle or come up with some other transportation. At that point, I could work hard in my own space instead of having to find someplace else to study. If I wanted to socialize, my roommates and I could always invite people over to parties on the weekend. Whether the apartment was quiet or full of people would be up to me, as I would have control over my living environment.

苏珊评析

这道题要求先比较两个事物的优点，再谈自己的选择。不论在内容还是语言上，比较学生两种住宿形式的“利”并不是很难。和第10章许多写作题一样，这道题包含Some people like to VERB, while others like to VERB这类短语。但这道题明确要求考生比较两种事物的“利”，因此考生应关注“利”，而不是“弊”。当然，顺便提一提“弊”也是可以的。

该范文的第一段使用了新闻式的引导句，说越来越多的学生倾向住在校外。第二段写住校内宿舍的优点；第三段则说明住在校外公寓的优点。总结段总结了第二段和第三段的要点，提出自己的观点：第一年住在校内宿舍，接下来的三年住在校外公寓。

3 · Compare two choices and explain which one should choose.

Your friend has received some money and plans to use all of it to take a trip or to buy a car. Your friend asks you for advice. Compare your friend's two choices and explain which one you think your friend should choose.

Use specific reasons and details to support your recommendation.

写作构思

Negatives of car:

- City traffic
- Parking
- Friend doesn't know how to drive

Positives of car:

- Friend wants car for commuting

Positives of vacation:

Learn new things

Experiences will shape individual

高分范文3

Whenever we give advice, it is a big responsibility. To counsel my friend about whether to use his gift money for a car or a trip, I would first try to understand his situation. **Barring**（把.....排除在外不予考虑） any special circumstances, I would recommend that he take a trip and persuade him with the following arguments.

On the surface, a car may seem like a better investment: It is a material possession and a status symbol. Perhaps he might be able to use it on weekends. Yet the reality is that buying a car just doesn't seem practical for my friend, and so is a poor choice. For one thing, my friend is a student and doesn't need a car to get to class. Moreover, driving a car within the city is not efficient because the traffic is always a nightmare. On the other hand, if my friend puts the money he has received toward a special trip, he will be investing in himself.

Why is this true? For one thing, during his excursion he will be able to see distant places first-hand and learn about the people and customs there. For example, if he chooses to travel to Southern Europe, he can learn about the rich Mediterranean culture and the people there. He will be able to taste fresh ocean fish **seasoned with**（用.....调味） olive oil. No doubt he will also learn some expressions in French, Spanish, Italian and Greek.

In addition, my friend will accumulate unforgettable experiences and memories. These will all integrate into his identity. That is to say, for the rest of his life, these experiences will open his horizons, influencing how he thinks and how he perceives the world.

I would present the above arguments to my friend and encourage him to quickly choose a great destination for the coming summer. For a long trip, it is important for him to go now, before he gets tied up with a full-time job.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生比较一个朋友的两种选择，并给出建议。第一段先说需要全面了解朋友的情况后方可提出建议，然后说若没有特殊情况，建议朋友去旅行。第二段写得非常好，先陈述拥有轿车的好处，然后说朋友目前并不需要车，最后，谈完朋友不需要车的原因后，建议选择旅行。第三段和第四段详述旅行对朋友的益处。总结段非常简短，因为作文主体部分已经给出了非常有说服力的论据。为了让结论更有趣，考生还提了一个建议：For a long trip, it is important for him to go now, before he gets tied up with a full-time job.

4 · Compare two views. Which view do you agree with?

Some people believe that young people spend too much time trying to plan things that are out of their control. Other people believe that careful planning is essential for people who want to control their professional lives. Compare these two views on life planning. Which view do you agree with?

Use specific reasons to support your answer.

写作构思

Anti-planning view:

- World is changing, can't predict
- Obsession with control creates stress
- Depends on personality of person

Pro-planning view:

- Many professions, so research needed
- Don't know what skills needed
- Only irresponsible people don't plan

高分范文4

I recently spoke to a retired man who told me there were lots of opportunities for his generation, but few for my generation. This man never created a master career plan. He started several businesses and became very wealthy. After talking to him, I began to wonder whether careful planning was necessary to succeed in one's professional life.

Long-term career planning seems almost impossible **in this day and age**（在当今这个时代） because there are so many unexpected developments. Every time the economy goes up and down, certain jobs are added or eliminated. For example, manufacturing jobs, finance jobs, and IT jobs are **in flux**（变化，波动）. If one cannot predict the future, why plan for it?

Another reason young people might not want to spend time on detailed planning is that they can easily become obsessed about developing the "perfect" plan. Trying to achieve complete control over one's career through planning is impossible and causes stress. Young people should realize that there will always be "surprises" in life.

Yet there are also people who say planning has become **indispensable**（不可或缺的） in this era. There are many diverse careers available these days, with new fields and jobs emerging every day. Thus, unless students spend time researching various professions, they won't know which opportunities suit them best. The chances of us **stumbling onto**（偶然遇到） the right career are slim.

A related argument for life planning is the need for young people to know what skills will be needed for their chosen profession.

Different careers require different skill sets. While some skills can be acquired on the job, many take a long time to develop. Communication skills are one such example. In today's highly competitive job market, successful job candidates need to start identifying and **honing career skills**（磨练职业技能） early on.

It is not easy to plan because of the unknowns in our lives. However, my personal view is that nowadays young people should plan carefully. Even though we cannot know exactly what will happen, the core skills of many jobs are predictable. Those who can plan ahead will be much better equipped to meet the requirements of their chosen field and rewarded with a better future.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生比较两种观点并表达个人意见。在第一段，考生用一个退休人士的故事引出话题：After talking to him, I began to wonder whether careful planning was necessary to succeed in one's professional life.这个句子很自然地引出下面几段赞同及反对职业规划的论据。在总结段，考生表达了自己的观点：尽管生活中充满了不确定的因素，但年轻人还是应该提前做好职业规划。

5 · Compare and contrast... with... Which is better?

Compare and contrast the education gained through online virtual lectures with the education gained through lectures in a physical classroom. Which is better?
Use reasons and specific details to explain your choice.

写作构思

Virtual lectures:

- Efficiency
- Retention of information
- Lower tuition

Traditional classroom lectures:

- Interactions
- Personal bonds with teachers
- Relationships that help us after school
- Teachers like traditional classroom better
- Online courses get watered down so not respected

高分范文5

Webcasts and other virtual lectures delivered to one's home or dormitory through computers have become increasingly common at universities. In fact, many first-year classes are offered only through virtual lectures. Studies have examined student learning in virtual

lectures and traditional classroom lectures and have found that both types of lecture have positive effects on learning. Moreover, in many ways, the new online virtual lectures are better than traditional lectures. Even so, virtual lectures cannot replace all the benefits of traditional classroom lectures, as I will explain below.

In terms of efficiency, virtual lectures are clearly superior to traditional classroom lectures. For one thing, students taking virtual courses do not have to get up early to go to class. Whereas students attending a lecture in a physical classroom have to navigate through rainy and snowy weathers, virtual lecture students can simply log onto their computers. Another way in which virtual lectures are relatively efficient is the fact that students are usually more focused while they are looking at the online lecture. This is in contrast to the relatively lax focus of the students sitting in large traditional lecture halls, where they can easily become bored or distracted by other students.

However, one way in which virtual lectures cannot compete with classroom lectures is in the ability to teach students "soft skills." Soft skills include interpersonal skills and critical reasoning skills, all very important for a student's career success. Students can't learn these important skills on a computer because a virtual lecture does not readily **accommodate**（顾及，考虑到） interaction among students, or between students and the teacher. In contrast, a traditional classroom enables a teacher to literally reach out to learners in real time. Furthermore, in the classroom, it is easier for teachers to be a source of inspiration, to diagnose potential problems and to **foster**（促进） personal growth.

From the above, it is clear that both modes of lecturing can be effective teaching platforms. Nevertheless, I personally believe that education in the traditional classroom is superior. While virtual lectures may be more efficient for teaching "hard skills," classroom lectures enrich a student by offering opportunities for social and intellectual interaction. Education is not just learning facts, it is also learning about people.

苏珊评析

因为写作题要求考生进行比较和对比，所以这篇作文采用的是逐点法。在第一段，考生说虚拟网络课堂和传统实体课堂都各有优点。从某些方面来说，虚拟网络课堂更好一些，但它不能代替传统实体课堂。这基本上就是本文的论点。第二段比较虚拟网络课堂和传统实体课堂的效率。第三段则在学生“软技巧”（soft skills）的学习方面对两种课堂进行比较。在总结段，考生重述论点，声明自己更倾向于传统实体课堂。

建立自己的写作句型库

Nonetheless, like all modes of travel, x travel has advantages and disadvantages. 但是，.....旅行同其他所有旅行模式一样，也是有利有弊的。

Nonetheless, like all modes of travel, train travel has advantages and disadvantages.

拓展 Nonetheless, like all modes of travel, air travel has advantages and disadvantages.

On the positive side, x travel is extremely ADJECTIVE compared to other forms of travel, including y and z travel. 从正面来看，同其他方式的旅行相比，.....旅行非常.....

On the positive side, train travel is extremely comfortable compared to other forms of travel,

including car and plane travel.

拓展 On the positive side, car travel is extremely flexible compared to other forms of travel, including bus and train travel.

Unlike x passengers, y passengers need to VERB 与.....乘客不同，.....乘客需要.....

Unlike train passengers, airplane passengers need to report very early and go through lengthy security checks.

拓展 Unlike air passengers, car passengers need to stop and get gas.

The most obvious drawback of x is the inability to VERB最明显的劣势便是它无法.....

The most obvious drawback of trains is the inability to cross large stretches of water.

拓展 The most obvious drawback of living in a dorm is the inability to cook.

Another downside to x is that..., especially if one is... 另一个不便之处就是.....，尤其当一个人.....

Another downside to train travel is that it can take a very long time, especially if one is traveling a great distance.

拓展 Another downside to buying a car is that there are many additional costs, especially if one has to pay for parking.

The decision is not always an easy one, since there are advantages to both x and y 因为.....和.....各有优势，从中做出决定并非易事

The decision is not always an easy one, since there are advantages to both dormitories and apartments.

拓展 The decision is not always an easy one, since there are advantages to both virtual online lectures and classroom lectures.

One advantage of VERBing is....的优势之一是.....

One advantage of living in a campus dormitory is convenience.

拓展 One advantage of building a new museum is the ability to attract tourists.

Yet, as mentioned above, x also has perks. 但是，如上文所述，.....也有好的地方。

Yet, as mentioned above, living off campus in a rental apartment also has perks.

拓展 Yet, as mentioned above, traveling abroad also has perks.

To counsel my friend about whether to VERB, I would first try to understand his situation. 为了给朋友提供.....建议，我要先了解他的情况。

To counsel my friend about whether to use his gift money for a car or a trip, I would first try to understand his situation.

拓展 To counsel my friend about whether to buy a car, I would first try to understand his situation.

On the other hand, if my friend puts the money he has received toward x, he will be investing in himself. 另一方面，如果我的朋友将自己的收入用于.....，那么他便是在自我投资。

On the other hand, if my friend puts the money he has received toward a special trip, he will be investing in himself.

拓展 On the other hand, if my friend puts the money he has received toward overseas travel, he will be investing in himself.

I would present the above arguments to my friend and encourage him to VERB 我将用上述观点来劝说朋友.....

I would present the above arguments to my friend and encourage him to quickly choose a great destination for the coming summer.

拓展 I would present the above arguments to my friend and encourage him to find an internship position at a bank.

x seems almost impossible in this day and age because... 在当今时代，.....似乎是几乎不可能的，因为.....

Long-term career planning seems almost impossible in this day and age because there are so many unexpected developments.

拓展 Restoring historic buildings seems almost impossible in this day and age because of the demand for prime real estate.

However, my personal view is that nowadays x should VERB 可是，我个人认为如今.....应该.....

However, my personal view is that nowadays young people should plan carefully.

拓展 However, my personal view is that nowadays city planners should preserve historic buildings.

In terms of x, y are clearly superior to z在.....方面明显优于.....

In terms of efficiency, virtual lectures are clearly superior to traditional classroom lectures.

拓展 In terms of cost, bus travel is clearly superior to air travel.

This is in contrast to x in y, where they can easily become ADJECTIVE 这与.....的.....相反，.....很容易就.....

This is in contrast to the relatively lax focus of the students sitting in large traditional lecture halls, where they can easily become bored or distracted by other students.

拓展 This is in contrast to the long hours of a high-paying job in a corporation, where they can easily become exhausted.

However, one way in which x cannot compete with y is in the ability to VERB 可是，在.....方面，.....与.....无法相提并论

However, one way in which virtual lectures cannot compete with classroom lectures is in the ability to teach students "soft skills."

拓展 However, one way in which the old generation cannot compete with younger generation is in the ability to use new technologies.

Nevertheless, I personally believe that x is superior. 但我个人认为.....更好。

Nevertheless, I personally believe that education in the traditional classroom is superior.

拓展 Nevertheless, I personally believe that handmade items are superior.

12 "What": What changes What skills

如何应对What题型

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何组织What题型作文的篇章结构
 - 怎么写好作文第一段
- 解读常考题

独立写作题中会有很多What题型。这种题型大多问有些角色具有什么样的特征或特点，比如好老板、好邻居、好朋友、好父母、好儿子或好女儿等具有什么样的特征。

还有一种What题型是问从事某些职业的人群需要哪些技能。

另一种What题型会问考生一些抽象的问题，比如考生如何看待某一类话题或者为了实现某个目标他们会怎么做。这种题和agree / disagree写作题型有相似之处，但有一个很大的区别：What题型是开放性的，考生不需要二选一，而是要进行自由阐述。

大部分What题型都是开放性的，但有一小部分What题型会包含几个和话题相关的例子来帮助阐明语境，比如：

What quality is most important for success in life (for example, honesty, a sense of humor, intelligence)?

给出例子的what题，考生可以不从给出的例子里挑选写作素材。考生可以选择自己想讨论的任何特点，比如，毅力。给出例子只是为了帮助考生理解题目意思，并不是给出一个写作范围。

某些开放性的题目会有难度，有些考生可能不知道该写什么内容。如何解决这一难题呢？

1· 看题目，列提纲（用母语或者英语都可以）。比如，你个人可能认为“朋友”需要具备以下特征：loyal, understanding, generous, a good-listener和sensitive。然后，选其中几个特征来写，看看哪一个特征更容易写出来。

2· 不要逐字背诵别人写的范文，一定要加入自己的经历。没有个性化的作文是得不到高分的。

3· 要自信，还要有想象力！切记，在这种写作类型里，没有标准的答案或写法。评分人并不是要看观点非常新颖的作文，否则，他们就会把写作题全设置成二选一作文题。

包含what, why或how的开放性写作题的篇章结构可以按照以下来组织：

Specific（具体的）→**General**（概括的）→**Specific**（具体的）→**General**（概括的）

利用这种方法，考生应在第一段给出问题的具体答案，比如，可以说：To me, the most important quality in a friend is that she be generous.在概括部分，要概括说明generosity对自己意味着什么，为什么它很重要，比如：In give-and-take relationships, such as friendships, and even

marriage, generosity of spirit is the foundation.在接下来的分论点段落，考生可以给出有关慷慨（或缺乏慷慨）的具体例子来说明其重要性。最后，总结段概括并总结观点，补充其他特征，比如：As I have described above, when people are willing to make sacrifices for one another, it is a true sign of friendship. Selfish people are not going to keep friends very long.

另一种篇章结构的组织方式是：
General（概括的）→**Specific**（具体的）→**General**（概括的）

在这种结构中，考生在第一段陈述自己的观点前要先总体概述。下面这篇关于植物的高分范文就是用的这种方法。

苏珊举例

Directions:

Read the question below. You have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, an effective response will contain a minimum of 300 words.

Plants can be used for many things. What is one kind of plant that is important to you or your country?
Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

这道写作题要求考生写一种对自己或其国家具有特殊意义的植物，并说明理由。写作文前，考生必须迅速进行构思，选定一种植物。然后，写下该植物对自己或国家意义重大的两三个原因。这两三个原因就是作文的分论点段落。

Exercise 1

根据上面例题的题目要求写一篇作文。初稿完成后，继续学习下部分的内容。仔细阅读高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

高分范文

写作构思

- Bamboo
- Gardens
- Poetry
- Trees**
- Food chain**
- Raw materials**
- Landscaping**
- Deforestation**

高分范文

All plants are valuable resources; it is not a coincidence that plants are at the bottom of the food chain. Through **photosynthesis**（光合作用）, they produce **carbohydrates**（碳水化合物）, the basic energy source for our bodily functions. Besides this fundamental use, humans have learned to use plants in different ways, so we can live more comfortably. Of all plants, the one that I think is most important to China is the tree.

One way in which trees contribute to our standard of living is as a source of material. Trees can be used to make a variety of things. Nice homes are built with lumber; most furniture is made of wood. Paper can be made from several different plants, but it is made primarily from tree **pulp**（纸浆）. The fabric rayon, a man-made silk, is made mostly of tree fibers. These fibers make fabrics shiny and allow them to hang well.

And who can deny that trees in landscaping add value to our lives? Trees that are strategically planted around a house can provide shade that cools us and helps save energy in the summer. They also add to the beauty of a space, whether it is where a person lives or works. In cities, people love to have tree-lined **boulevards**（林阴大道） and parks with lots of flowers and trees. In fact, our sense of natural beauty in landscape design depends, to a large extent, on the presence of attractive trees.

Yet as significant as trees are as resources for materials and landscaping, these uses pale next to our need for trees to supply us with a healthy planet. Large-scale tree felling creates a host of environmental problems. In our country, large areas of land have been cleared for agricultural use to feed the ever-growing human population. Crops cannot hold topsoil the way trees can. As a result, floods have been a problem throughout our country's history as soil accumulation changed the course of waterways. In addition, increased human activity beginning with the Industrial Revolution has increased the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere by thirty percent, causing global warming and unpredictable climate change. Because forests absorb carbon, deforestation makes climate problems even worse.

Fortunately, China has **a large land mass**（辽阔的陆地） which can support a lot of trees. If we learn how to live with trees, we can enjoy many tree products and live in a beautiful and healthy environment.

万用写作模板

〔开头用两三句介绍植物的重要性〕. Of all _____, the one that I think is most important to _____ is _____.

One way in which _____ contribute to our standard of living is as _____. _____ can be used to 〔第一种用途〕. 〔举两三个具体例子〕.

And who can deny that _____ in _____ add value to our lives? 〔举两三个具体例子〕.

Yet as significant as _____ are as resources for 〔第一种用途〕 and 〔第二种用途〕,

these uses pale next to our need for _____ to supply us with 〔第三种用途〕. 〔举两三个具体例子〕.

Fortunately, _____ has _____ which can support a lot of _____. If we learn how to live with _____, we can enjoy 〔改述第一种用途〕 and 〔改述第二种和第三种用途〕.

这篇范文的开头先概述：植物是宝贵的资源——处于食物链金字塔的最底层，是人体的能量来源。然后，为了引出下面的观点，说人类学会了很多利用植物的方法。第一段最后一句，考生提出：自己认为最重要的植物是树木。第二段和第三段阐述了树木的两种用途：人类重要的生产和生活资料以及景观美化。第四段描述了树木和森林对环境的保护作用。注意本文是如何在最后说明树木最重要的用途的！这是一种有效的修辞策略。总结段没有补充内容，但总结得非常好。

★ 赋能技能 宏观篇章技能：如何写出漂亮的第一段

1· 第一段写什么内容

第一段应包含三项内容：

- 1) 为读者提供有用的并且有趣的背景信息。
- 2) 让读者了解话题，例如，对题目进行改述。
- 3) 就该话题进行清晰的陈述或者“暗示”自己的观点。

2· 让第一段吸引人的写作方法

虽然这是考试作文，但是开头写得吸引人对考生有好处。评分人要看成百上千篇作文，一天下来会非常疲惫。如果考生的作文吸引人，尤其在开始段落，评分人往往会给高分。

第一段打造有趣的句子有很多种方法：

- √ 总体概述
- √ 开门见山陈述观点（中心句）
- √ 为一个术语或问题下定义
- √ 陈述一件惊奇的事
- √ 强调一个需要解决的问题
- √ 讲述一个解说性的轶事
- √ 描述一个相关的趋势
- √ 提出一个核心问题

以上有些方法是可以同时运用的。比如，一道要求讨论饮食习惯的写作题，考生可以提纲挈领地提出一个问题作为开头：

Is the fast food industry making our children sick?

提出问题之后，考生再给出背景信息，提出论点。如：

Is the fast food industry making our children sick? For years, researchers have been telling us that the fats and sugar in fast food are harmful to the health of customers, including children. There are many harmful effects of eating out at fast food restaurants, as I will explain below.

再看看本章中范文第一段的写法，它们展示了不同的写作技巧。
下面的开头句包含一个总体概述和一个有趣且重要的科学事实：

All plants are valuable resources; it is not a coincidence that plants are at the bottom of the food chain. Through photosynthesis, they produce carbohydrates, the basic energy source for our bodily functions. Besides this fundamental use, humans have learned to use plants in different ways, so we can live more comfortably. Of all plants, the one that I think is most important to China is the tree.

下面这一首段的开头句讲述了相关趋势：

Over the years, each generation has embraced a different style of parenting. One generation advocates a strict approach, while the next generation tells us to "follow the child's personality."Certainly, it is easier to be a parent in theory than in practice. Yet despite the differences in parenting trends, I think most people agree that certain characteristics are necessary for young people who seek to raise loving and responsible children.

在下面这个开头段，考生先描述趋势，然后给adulthood下定义：

Ever since the Industrial Revolution, human beings have spent relatively more time in "childhood," perhaps because the complex world forces us to spend more time learning the skills we need to prosper. **In my view, "adulthood" is defined as the time when a person is ready to deal with the world without parental help.**

- 写出漂亮第一段的策略：
 - 1 · 给出背景信息，为读者提供充足的语境。
 - 2 · 不要用Yes, I agree等类似的简短评论开头。至少写一句可以让评分人理解话题或论点的句子。
 - 3 · 改述题目中的用词。
 - 4 · 陈述自己的观点或者至少表明你对该话题的想法。
 - 5 · 观点句可以在总体概述之前也可以在总体概述之后。只要充分表达，每一种方法都可以引起读者的兴趣。
 - 6 · 第一段最后一句和第二段第一句的衔接一定要自然、连贯。

作文第一段写得有趣有很多种方法，上述开头段落的写法只是其中的几种。想要了解更多写好第一段的方法，考生应该认真研读本书所有的高分范文。

建立自己的写作句型库

Of all x, the one that I think is most important to y is the z 所有.....之中，我认为.....
对于.....最重要

Of all plants, the one that I think is most important to China is the tree.

拓展 Of all plants, the one that I think is most important to South Korea is the chrysanthemum.

One way in which x contribute to our standard of living is as a source of material.
作为一种材料来源，有助于我们生活水平的提升。

One way in which trees contribute to our standard of living is as a source of material.

拓展 One way in which bamboo contributes to our standard of living is as a source of material.

x creates a host of environmental problems.引发许多环境问题。

Large-scale tree felling creates a host of environmental problems.

拓展 Using too much fertilizer creates a host of environmental problems.

If we learn how to VERB, we can enjoy many x products and live in a beautiful and healthy environment. 倘若我们学会如何.....，我们就能享用.....的产品，并生活在美丽、健康的环境之中。

If we learn how to live with trees, we can enjoy many tree products and live in a beautiful and healthy environment.

拓展 If we learn how to garden organically, we can enjoy many organic products and live in a beautiful and healthy environment.

Exercise 2

学完高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的技能修改你的初稿，并认真看修改之处。然后用学到的新句型去练习下面五道预测题的写作。

写作预测题

1 · What are some of the characteristics...

What are some of the characteristics of a good parent?

Use specific details and examples to explain your answer.

写作构思

Parenting trends

Sense of humor

Invest in children

Values education

Role model

Encouraging

Firm

高分范文1

Over the years, each generation has embraced a different style of parenting. One generation advocates a strict approach, while the next generation tells us to "follow the child's personality."Certainly, it is easier to be a parent in theory than in practice. Yet despite the differences in parenting trends, I think most people agree that certain characteristics are necessary for young people who seek to raise loving and responsible children.

One of the **indisputable**（无可争辩的，不容置疑的） requirements for good parenting is being a good role model. Children learn from imitating adults. They observe parents dealing with their friends and colleagues, obeying laws and regulations, taking care of animals and the environment, as well as keeping house and reading books. Working and playing, our offspring learn and copy what they see. It is said that children are genetically wired to learn from their parents without asking questions. If this is true, then there is no better way to teach children than to be a good example. Through modeling, parents teach their children even though no explicit language is used.

Being firm is another important quality for a parent. Too often you will see **unruly children**（难管教的孩子） in public places, and you will see their parents by their side and doing nothing about it. Children by nature are curious and like to try out new things; they also like to see what they can **get away with**（做坏事而未受惩罚）. Rule-obeying citizens are the foundation of a civic society. If the children are to grow up to be law-abiding citizens, they need to be taught to respect rules from an early age. When you see children displaying unacceptable behavior in public, you can be sure their parents do not teach them at home. I am not against **loving and doting parents**（宠爱孩子的父母）, but I think they have a duty to society when they bring a life into this world. They should be responsible for making sure children grow up to be good citizens. They have to be firm and teach them the value of obeying rules.

Other characteristics that are helpful for parents include being responsive to children's needs, being patient and being supportive. Many best-selling books about parenting have been published, but raising children is not as easy as the books suggest. Still, if we strive to be good role models and work hard to teach our children the difference between right and wrong, we have a better chance to become good parents.

苏珊评析

这篇范文先说不同时代有不同的教育孩子的方式，接下来说尽管有不同的教育方式，但是优秀的父母具备某些共同特点。第二段和第三段分别讲述了一个特点：以身作则和严格要求。最后一段先列举了优秀父母具备的其他几种品质，然后重申只要父母以身作则，教孩子明辨是非，就是好父母。

2 · What events...

People make a distinction between children and adults. What events (experiences or rituals) make someone an "adult"?

Use specific reasons and examples to explain your answer.

写作构思

Coming of age

Legal age

Puberty（青春期） and physical maturity

Get married

College age

Working age

Rituals

高分范文2

Ever since the Industrial Revolution, human beings have spent relatively more time in "childhood," perhaps because the complex world forces us to spend more time learning the skills we need to **prosper**（成功）. In my view, "adulthood" is defined as the time when a person is ready to deal with the world without parental help.

Although every society is unique, there are several commonly shared events that mark the passing of childhood into adulthood. First is the legal age. The legal age varies in different countries; it could be 18, or 21 or some other age. In addition, different legal ages are set for different purposes; for example, the minimum ages set for driving, voting and drinking. The rationale behind this **delineation**（界定） is that when one reaches that particular age, one is no longer a child and can be **held** legally **accountable for**（对.....负责） one's acts.

The "college age" is another **demarcation**（界限） between children and adults. Students are treated more or less as children prior to entering university, but once they are enrolled, they tend to be treated as adults. It is not surprising that most people go to college at the age of 18, also the legal age for voting in many countries. Nothing speaks more strongly about a person's acceptance into the world of adults than when he or she is granted the right to vote for the election of public officials.

Oftentimes rituals are held to celebrate an individual's induction into adulthood. In France, young women are introduced to society when they reach a certain age. The young ladies are called debutantes, signifying their first appearance on the public stage. In Jewish culture, **Bar and Bat Mitzvah**（一种犹太成人礼） ceremonies are held for young men and women coming of age. In relatively remote societies such as the one found in Papua New Guinea, there are elaborate ceremonies marking the coming of age of young men.

It is important to remember that the biological age at which one is considered an adult varies from one society to the next. What is comparable in all societies is the expectation that upon "coming of age," the individual will bear the responsibilities that come with being an adult.

苏珊评析

在 第一段，考生先给adulthood下定义，即一个人走出父母的羽翼可以独立处事的时期。第二段谈论成人的法定年龄。第三段把上大学作为成年的一个标志。第四段谈论几个国家

的成人礼仪式。总结段最后一句重述论点：不论年龄或仪式，“成熟”是和一个社会成员的完全责任能力相伴的。

3 · What is one thing you will do...

You have decided to volunteer some time each month to improve the community where you live. What is one thing you will do to improve your community? Why?

Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

写作构思

- Wuhan
 - Clean up litter on campus
 - Spend time with senior citizens
 - Read to the blind
- Help children of migrant workers
 - They seem to be the ones most in need
 - I enjoy teaching children

高分范文3

Because my university is located in Wuhan, China, that is the community where I would work as a volunteer. Wuhan is a big city. Not surprisingly, there are many things needed to be done in order to improve the lives of local people. Many social initiatives are best carried out by the city government, but there is always a need for volunteers in **the private arena**（私人活动领域）. If I had a few hours to spare, I would spend them teaching the children of **migrant workers**（农民工）.

Some people might not regard migrant workers as members of our "community" since they are not technically permanent residents. The fact is, however, that the migrant workers here spend all their time working in metropolitan Wuhan, with the exception of 10 or so days a year, when they go back to their hometowns for the Spring Festival. To me, that qualifies them as members of our community and deserving of social support.

A sense of fairness drives my desire to help these children. Many migrant families come from agricultural backgrounds, and so the parents are often not really qualified to tutor them at home. Moreover, it seems particularly appropriate for me to "give back" to society in the specific area of education. Like other college students, I pay a relatively low tuition fee, thanks to a heavy subsidy from our fellow countrymen. It is only right that we give back some of our time and energy to people in need.

Not all my reasons for volunteering are **altruistic**（无私的）, since I know I will be rewarded for my work in the form of enjoyment and fulfillment. Teaching children can be a wonderful experience. Every time you work with them, you can see how the human mind is developing. Moreover, these children, along with their parents, **are especially appreciative of**（特别感激） every

hour invested, which will make my job as tutor all the more **gratifying**（令人满足的）.

In sum, if I had to choose one area in which to contribute my time, I would definitely choose to teach the children of migrant workers. Many of these children are very bright and hard-working, and I know that even a little time spent with them will yield **tangible results**（明显的效果）.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生选择做一件事来完善社区生活。有几种开头方法：一种是描述几种志愿工作，从中选择一种；另一种是简单陈述自己的选择并说明理由。这篇范文用到的是第二种方法。考生先介绍自己所居住的城市，然后陈述选择的志愿活动。第二段陈述农民工的生存状况，说他们是社会的成员，应该得到社会的支助。第三、第四段解释为什么想帮助农民工的孩子。总结段重申论点（**I would definitely choose to teach the children of migrant workers.**）并补充说农民工的孩子都很聪明，而且也很努力，我的付出会有很大的成效。

4 · What have you learned...

Films can tell us a lot about the country where they were made. What have you learned about a country from watching movies?

Use specific examples and details to support your response.

写作点题

Foreign films

Borat

US

Learn colloquial English from movies

See beautiful scenery without traveling

Everyday people

Domestic films

高分范文4

Unlike many of my friends, I am not passionate about movies, especially foreign ones. Nevertheless, from the few foreign films I have watched, I think I have learned quite a bit about other countries.

In the comedy "Borat," for example, I was exposed to everyday culture in the US. The title character, Borat, played by an English comedian, is supposedly a government worker from Kazakhstan. Borat's mission is to produce a video that can introduce the American way of life to his countrymen. As Borat goes around the country, he gets involved in all kinds of situations, all the time asking Americans

how they do things. He often makes a fool of himself, pretending to be ignorant, even to the point of rudeness. In one scene, a nice man patiently teaches Borat how to drive a car. In another, Borat **hitches a ride**（搭顺风车） with a group of rowdy young men. Very few of the Americans photographed during the production knew "Borat" was really a comedian producing a **feature film**（故事片）.

Upon viewing this movie, what I learned was how open Americans were and how willing they were to help strangers, even "crazy" ones. In one scene where Borat is invited to join a dinner among friends, he deliberately tries his hosts' patience by asking ridiculous questions and acting in impolite ways. The movie audience sees how these ordinary people got pulled into **pranks**（恶作剧） like these **unwittingly**（不知不觉地）, **all the while**（自始至终） being **gracious**（有礼貌的） and helpful, until it was just too weird for them to continue. I have not been to the US, but I do have a few American friends. Like the real people shown in "Borat," my friends seem very willing to help people, even people they have never met before.

Actually, I usually learn something new even when I watch movies made in my own country. For example, I become more familiar with the geography and local culture where the story is set. In especially good movies, the social setting and regional dialect play a prominent role, making me understand even more about that particular time and place. Thus, no matter whether I am watching foreign or domestic movies, my horizons are broadened in one way or another.

苏珊评析

范文第一段虽然简单但很有作用。考生说自己并不喜欢看电影。看过几部国外影片，从中了解到不少其他国家的知识。第二段和第三段讲述影片Borat的故事情节，并说自己通过观看这部影片了解了美国文化和美国人热情开放、乐于助人的性格特征。总结段补充了一点：观看本国电影也学到了新东西。最后一句重申论点：中外影片扩展了自己的视野。

5 · Which x would you like...

You have won a prize that allows you to visit a foreign country of your choice for two weeks. Which country would you like to visit?

Use specific reasons and details to explain your choice.

写作构思

Japan

US

Italy

Singapore

Differences

Similar history

How they became modern

Cleanliness

Am studying the language

高分范文5

There are many countries I would like to visit, including Italy, the United States and Singapore. But the country I would most like to explore is Japan. We Chinese have mixed feelings about Japan. We admire it because of the **phenomenal**（非凡的，惊人的）technical and economic achievements the Japanese have made in the last hundred years, yet we remember the **atrocities**（暴行）committed in China by Japanese forces during the war. These contradictory images come together in my mind, making me eager to see how Japanese live now. At the same time, I want to gain more insight into how China and Japan compare.

One area of difference relates to the pace of modernization in each of our countries' histories. About a hundred and fifty years ago, both Japan and China were relatively undeveloped. Both countries were forced to sign unequal treaties with Western powers. Reformers in both countries were trying to transform society from a feudal system to a more modern system. For Japan, modernization came swiftly, with the **Meiji Restoration**（明治维新）. However, for China, modernization did not take place until well over a hundred years later. Many historians blame our problems on the imperial court politics of the late Qing dynasty, but to me this does not explain why Japan was so successful. I believe that part of Japan's success can be attributed to the character of the Japanese people, one reason I want to see Japan first-hand.

I have to confess that I also want to see if Japan is really as spotless as everyone says it is. Friends who have visited Japan are always **raving about**（极力夸奖）the cleanliness of Japan. I know from television programs that this is true, but I still want to go there and see for myself. I am hoping to understand how big cities, full of people, can remain so clean.

In short, though Chinese and Japanese cultures are similar, there are many differences. It is these differences, particularly in our everyday lifestyles, that **pique my interest**（引起我的兴趣）. I am confident that a two-week visit to Japan will provide insights into some of these issues and answer a lot of my questions.

苏珊评析

这篇范文的第一段非常有趣，考生先表明自己想去旅游的国家是日本。接下来谈原因：对日本持有复杂的感情——永远不会忘记二战中日本在中国犯下的罪行，同时很钦佩日本在科技和经济上取得的巨大成就。这种矛盾的心理让“我”对这个国家产生了好奇心。同时，也想了解中日两国的差异。第二段对两国的差异进行了举例论证，即日本和中国在现代化的实现方式上有所不同。这一段也非常有趣，因为考生提出了一个假设并且想证实该假设：**part of Japan's success can be attributed to the character of the Japanese people**。第三段很引人入胜，描述了想去日本旅游的第二个动机：想看日本的**cleanliness**。总结段重述考生观点，即中国和日本有很多相同点和不同点，但进一步论述说，正是这些不同引起“我”对日本的兴趣。最后一句论述了这次拟定的行程能让“我”深入了解两国的差异，并解开“我”心中的许多疑问（在第二段和第三段中概述的疑问），因此结尾很出彩。这篇范文很好地展现了在写作中如何做到前后连贯。

建立自己的写作句型库

Over the years, each generation has embraced a different style of x 多年来，每一代人

都有不同的.....方式

Over the years, each generation has embraced a different style of parenting.

拓展 Over the years, each generation has embraced a different style of communicating.

One of the indisputable requirements for x is...其中一个不容争辩的必要条件是.....

One of the indisputable requirements for good parenting is being a good role model.

拓展 One of the indisputable requirements for a good teacher is having an inquisitive mind.

x is another important quality for a parent.是家长的另一个重要品质。

Being firm is another important quality for a parent.

拓展 A sense of humor is another important quality for a parent.

Other characteristics that are helpful for parents include x, y and z 其他有益于家长的性格特点是.....

Other characteristics that are helpful for parents include being responsive to children's needs, being patient and being supportive.

拓展 Other characteristics that are helpful for parents include patience, enthusiasm and a willingness to listen.

Although every society is unique, there are several commonly shared x that mark the passing of childhood into adulthood. 虽然，每个社会都是独一无二的，但一个人从童年步入成年的标志性.....有一些相通之处。

Although every society is unique, there are several commonly shared events that mark the passing of childhood into adulthood.

拓展 Although every society is unique, there are several commonly shared ceremonies that mark the passing of childhood into adulthood.

x is another demarcation between children and adults.是儿童与成人的另一个分界线。

The "college age" is another demarcation between children and adults.

拓展 The onset of puberty（青春期的到来） is another demarcation between children and adults.

A sense of x drives my desire to help y感驱使我想帮助.....

A sense of fairness drives my desire to help these children.

拓展 A sense of **empathy**（同情） drives my desire to help these senior citizens.

It is only right that we give back some of our time and energy to x 抽出一部分时间和精力用于.....是完全正确的

It is only right that we give back some of our time and energy to people in need.

拓展 It is only right that we give back some of our time and energy to victims of natural disasters.

In sum, if I had to choose one area in which to contribute my time, I would definitely choose to VERB 总之，倘若必须选择花时间到某个领域，我一定会选择.....

In sum, if I had to choose one area in which to contribute my time, I would definitely choose to

teach the children of migrant workers.

拓展 In sum, if I had to choose one area in which to contribute my time, I would definitely choose to help build new homes for earthquake victims in China.

Nevertheless, from the x I have VERBed, I think I have learned quite a bit about other countries. 但我认为我已经从.....中了解到许多关于其他国家的知识。

Nevertheless, from the few foreign films I have watched, I think I have learned quite a bit about other countries.

拓展 Nevertheless, from the books I have read, I think I have learned quite a bit about other countries.

In [MOVIE TITLE], for example, I was exposed to everyday culture in [COUNTRY].
以.....为例，我从中了解到了.....日常文化

In the comedy "Borat," for example, I was exposed to everyday culture in the US.

拓展 In "Amélie," for example, I was exposed to everyday culture in France.

There are many countries I would like to visit, including x, y and z 我想游览许多国家，包括.....

There are many countries I would like to visit, including Italy, the United States and Singapore.

拓展 There are many countries I would like to visit, including Spain, Italy and France.

But the country I would most like to explore is x 但我最想探索的国家是.....

But the country I would most like to explore is Japan.

拓展 But the country I would most like to explore is Sweden.

One area of difference relates to x 在.....方面存在差异

One area of difference relates to the pace of modernization in each of our countries' histories.

拓展 One area of difference relates to the fact that England is an island.

I have to confess that I also want to see if x is really as y as everyone says it is. 我不得不承认我也想对人们传言的.....一探究竟。

I have to confess that I also want to see if Japan is really as spotless as everyone says it is.

拓展 I have to confess that I also want to see if Thailand is really as fun as everyone says it is.

I am confident that a two-week visit to x will provide insights into some of these issues and answer a lot of my questions. 我相信为期两周的游览会令我对一些事情有深入的了解，并解开我心中的许多疑问。

I am confident that a two-week visit to Japan will provide insights into some of these issues and answer a lot of my questions.

拓展 I am confident that a two-week visit to India will provide insights into some of these issues and answer a lot of my questions.

13 "Why": Why do you think Why is x important

如何应对Why题型

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 作文中如何通过解释原因来达到论证目的
- 解读常考题

因为作文中需要给出原因，分论点需要围绕主论点进行论证，所以几乎所有的独立写作题目都要求考生解释原因，尽管没有明确说明。但有些写作题目会直接出现why，要求考生解释某个现象，问考生为什么认为……，或问某事物为什么重要等。本章要说明的就是这类题。

考生解释原因或说明潜在动机时，表达应清晰，语言要有说服力。
常见的题目有：

- 1 · People often VERB. **Why?**
- 2 · People VERB for **different reasons**. **Why is x important** to many people?
- 3 · Many students choose to VERB. **Why** do some students VERB?
- 4 · **Why do you think** people VERB?

下面来看一个例子。

苏珊举例

Directions:

Read the question below. You have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, an effective response will contain a minimum of 300 words.

Some gifts that we receive are particularly special to us. Why?
Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

Exercise 1

根据上面例题的题目要求写一篇作文。初稿完成后，继续学习下部分的内容。仔细阅读高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

高分范文

写作构思

- Bicycle from father
- Money from grandmother
- Old photos

Few gifts
Occasion commemorated
Significance

高分范文

Nowadays, people receive gifts for birthdays, Valentine's Day, the Spring Festival, school graduation and other special occasions. In days past, gifts were much rarer. When I **look back on**（回忆） the years I spent growing up in a poor family, I see very few gifts in my young life. There was one special present, however, that I will never forget.

In my third year of elementary school, my father gave me a bicycle after I **placed first in the whole class**（全班第一名）. At that time, we didn't have much money and so a bicycle to ride for fun was really a luxury item. From the first day of kindergarten I was a good student, and I consistently ranked in the top three, semester after semester. Still, my family never bought me a "prize" because they could not afford it. For reasons unknown to me, that spring was an exception. My father told me he would get me a gift if I did well again. Actually, I had never really thought about getting a present. It was enough for me to know my parents were proud of me; that was all the motivation I needed. I was happy I could please them with my good grades.

Once again, I ranked top of my class at the end of the semester. Not long after grades were posted, as I was returning home, I noticed there was a brand new bike standing in front of our small apartment. Running inside, I found my father sitting in a lounge chair fanning himself in the summer heat. I could see a smile on his usually serious face, but I rushed out to try the bike. From that day, that smiling face has been **deeply etched in my memory**（深深铭刻在我的记忆中）, serving to encourage me during tough times.

Without a doubt, this bicycle was a special childhood gift, a **tangible**（清晰可见的，摸得着的） symbol of my achievements and my parents' approval. Yet now that I am grown, I realize that the memory of that day is an even greater gift.

万用写作模板

Nowadays, people receive gifts for _____ and other special occasions. In days past, gifts were much rarer. When I look back on _____, I see very few gifts in my young life. There was one special present, however, that I will never forget.

In [时间短语], _____ gave me _____ after _____. At that time, [用两三句来描述事件].

[用两到三个句子来描述当时的感触，赠送礼物者的感触]. From that day, that ADJECTIVE face has been deeply etched in memory, serving to encourage me during tough times.

Without a doubt, [具体礼物] was a special childhood gift, a tangible symbol of _____ and _____. Yet now that I am grown, I realize that the memory of that day is an

even greater gift.

在这篇范文中，考生通过讲述故事来说明原因。讲述故事的方法对于Why is x important to you?这种写作题尤其有效，因为故事更容易表达事件的重要性。

第一段陈述故事的背景信息，说现在人们经常收到礼物，但像“我”这样来自贫困家庭的孩子，记忆之中很少有礼物。这是种铺垫，有助于读者理解下文要提及的礼物的重要性。第二段告诉读者这件特殊的礼物是什么，然后开始讲述故事。第三段继续讲述故事，但侧重描述这件礼物对“我”的重要意义。总结段很简洁，总结了这份特殊礼物的意义以及留给“我”的美好记忆。

★ 赋能技能 微观篇章技能：解释原因

在新托福考试的口语和写作部分，通过具体原因和细节来支持自己观点的能力是考生一项很重要的能力。如果独立写作想得5分，考生一定要在作文中详细地解释原因。

口语考试中，考生可以用非正式的语言来陈述原因，比如That's because...或That's why I...。但在写作部分，考生则要用正式的语言陈述原因，即用结构复杂的长句来呈现衔接和连贯。

在作文中解释原因，必须包括：

- 1· 为话题提供背景知识及阐明话题的几个具体细节或事实
- 2· 原因信号词

写Why题型的作文时，考生应该先提供一些背景知识，然后说明原因。因为原因可能非常复杂，所以考生必须得详细解释；比如，上篇高分范文中的最后一句：Yet now that I am grown, I realize that the memory of that day is an even greater gift.这个句子告诉读者：这份礼物唤起的是对父亲的回忆，但是直到长大成人之后“我”才意识到那一天对“我”的意义。

另外，没有必要总是列出原因一，原因二和原因三。考生可以给出有意思的细节来解释原因和目的。当然，这些细节要一目了然，其前后组织要有序，还要有恰当的信号词。下表中是常用的信号词，可以用在独立写作题中解释原因。

解释原因的句式

- The reason I...
- Due to my interest in x
- I hold this belief because...
- ... for the reason that...
- Thus, because I VERBed..., I went on to VERB
- My motivation for VERBing
- It was x that made me VERB
- It was only because...
- There are x reasons why...

If x had not y, I would never have VERB
The reason for me doing x was...
As a result, I...
The reason this experience was so meaningful to me is that...
Without the influence of x, I would never have VERB
For one thing,...
x made me realize...
Another factor was...
x caused me to VERB
My interest in x was due to...
x led me to VERB

许多考生解释原因时经常写出错误的句子。先看看下面考生作文中常见的错句，再看看正确的表达。不正确的单词或短语标有下划线。

常见错误表达	正确表达
Here <u>come</u> the reasons.	The reasons are listed below .
<u>Reasons</u> as follows.	The reasons for this are as follows.
I choose to avoid risks for <u>some</u> reasons.	I choose to avoid risks for several reasons.
There are <u>some</u> reasons to support my point of view.	There are several reasons to support my point of view.
I do not agree with the city's proposal <u>with</u> the following reasons.	I do not agree with the city's proposal for the following reasons.
There are several <u>reasons influence that</u> how many years people can live.	There are several factors that influence how many years people can live.
The reason <u>for scientists to invent</u> things is that they do the research over and over again.	The reason that scientists are able to invent things is that they do the research over and over again.

- 解释原因的策略：
 - 解释原因的措辞和句式要恰当。记住本章汇总的句式和“建立自己的写作句型库”里的相关表达，这样可以做到运用自如。
 - 要想表述清晰，在第一段就要说明接下来会列举原因；例如：Even in the 21st century, music is all around us and continues to play an important role in our lives, for many reasons.
 - 解释原因一定要具体；比如，简单地说I like popular music because it is lively并不能把原因解释清楚。要想得高分，原因需要用具体、紧随其后的例子来阐明。如：I like popular music because it is lively; for example, I listen to upbeat music like Rihanna's Don't Stop the Music.
 - 在大多数情况下，一个段落讲述一个原因。该段的中心句是原因，其余内容便是例子、解释和特殊情况。

5· 为了使表达清晰，一次讲述一个原因。如果同时讲多个原因，在文章中要说明。以本章写作预测题第三篇高分范文为例。第二段集中讲发展中国家学生的留学原因；第三段集中讲发达国家学生的留学原因。这两个原因分开来讲。但第四段提到的原因是包括这两类人在内的，即seeking prestige。这种情况下，考生应该指出前面提到的两类人都有追求声誉的动机，如：Aspiring young people from both developing and developed countries seek to enhance their resumes by obtaining degrees from world-class universities.这会使文章的表述更清晰，逻辑更连贯。

6· 有些题目可以通过讲述故事来给出原因。这种策略对Why is x of special importance to you?的写作题尤其有效。故事根据事件的原因来展示，即某人做某事或有某种感受的原因。

7· 把最重要的原因放到最后讲。

8· 总结段不需要详细地重述所有原因，只需总结及改述。最好在结论部分补充一条原因，这会达到更好的写作效果。

建立自己的写作句型库

There was one x, however, that I will never forget 然而，我永远不会忘却.....

There was one special gift, however, that I will never forget.

拓展 There was one occasion, however, that I will never forget.

Without a doubt, this x was a special childhood gift, a tangible symbol of y 毫无疑问，这个.....是我童年的一份特殊礼物，是.....的有形象征

Without a doubt, this bicycle was a special childhood gift, a tangible symbol of my achievements and my parents' approval.

拓展 Without a doubt, this antique necklace was a special childhood gift, a tangible symbol of my great-grandmother's love.

Exercise 2

学完高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的技能修改你的初稿，并认真看修改之处。然后用学到的新句型去练习下面五道预测题的写作。

写作预测题

1· Why is this?

Groups and organizations are an essential part of some people's lives. Why is this?

Give specific reasons and examples to explain your answer.

写作构思

Motivations

Sharing experiences

Volunteer groups

Loneliness

Have to pay dues （会费）

Informal, formal

Deal with emotional issues

Expand knowledge of their profession

New developments in the field

高分范文1

We live in a world with many different kinds of groups and organizations. Some groups are informal; for example, a circle of friends who get together every week to play cards. Other groups are formal in nature, such as professional and trade organizations. Associations exist for every occupation from doctors to plumbers; the list goes on and on. No matter whether informal or formal, each group and organization holds purpose for the individual members.

The primary motivation for people to join informal groups is social. Many informal support groups, for example, exist so that members can sit together and talk. In these small, relatively private settings, people can **let off steam**（宣泄郁积的情感） and discuss problems of **common interest**（共同的兴趣）. There are, for example, support groups for parents of children with special needs such as learning disorders and autism. Other informal support groups are made up of people trying to lose weight. These groups provide an important function that even medical professionals are unable to provide. Sharing experiences, even painful ones, can have a healing power. In addition to receiving moral support, group members are able to get timely practical advice from people in circumstances similar to their own.

Compared to informal group members, people who choose to become members of formal organizations have a wider range of reasons for their affiliations. For one thing, large associations allow members to expand their knowledge of their profession or industry by taking classes, listening to lecturers and gaining professional certification. At regularly scheduled regional and national meetings, people can network with other members about new developments in the field and job opportunities. In short, there are many practical benefits of large organizations.

From the above, we can see how both informal and formal groups and organizations offer utility to their members. Informal groups tend to be smaller and more private, and so individuals who seek personal help would be more likely to join one of these. Formal organizations have more resources and hold more prestige, and so individuals seeking professional advancement would have **incentives**（动机） to join these. Of course, the social element is common to all types of groups and organizations; the people who join up usually like to be with other people.

苏珊评析

这道写作题并不太容易写，因为groups和organizations的概念比较模糊。为了简化该写作题，考生从informal和formal两个角度为groups和organizations分类。这让话题更具体，也更容易理解，还为下文的论证提供了一个组织框架。第二段集中讲述非正式团体。考生列举了几个非正式团体，然后解释人们为什么加入这些团体。第三段集中讲述正式团体。注意考

生是如何运用信号词Compared to informal group members，...来连接两个段落，同时，还比较了非正式团体和正式团体会员的入会动机。这种写作手法增强了文章的衔接性和连贯性。总结段总结了人们加入非正式和正式团体的原因。在最后一句，考生强调了这些会员相同的动机，在修辞上称得上是一个不错的结尾。

2 · Why is this x important...

Almost everyone listens to music, but not for the same reasons. Why is music important to people?

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

- Classical music
- Soothing
- Releases stress
- Boring job, passes time
- Expressing emotion
- Love songs
- Dance
- Digital music is everywhere

高分范文2

The ancient Greek philosopher Plato once said that music was the soul of the universe. What Plato actually meant was that music adds value to humanity. Even in the 21st century, music is all around us and continues to play an important role in our lives, for many reasons.

First and foremost, music makes us feel good. Like songbirds, human beings like to pour their hearts out in song. We have evolved into a species that can create diverse and sophisticated music to express different emotions. There is music for every occasion; for celebrations, for funerals, for memorials and for expressing love. We respond to the kind of music that addresses our emotional needs of the moment. Love songs, for example, are universally popular because people are happy when they think about love.

In addition to making and listening to music, people love to move to music. Dance is inseparable from music. **Toddlers**（学步的孩童） start dancing as soon as they can stand on their two feet. Teenagers usually like dancing to loud music with a strong beat. Ballet dancers and dance skaters are athletes who need music to perform. In all of these cases, physical movements follow the sounds. In fact, many people move their bodies to music by clapping their hands or snapping their fingers.

Yet another reason that music **is integral to**（对.....不可或缺的） so many people's lives is that it is so accessible. There is a

seemingly endless supply of music because so many musicians are hard at work creating it. Basic laws of supply and demand affect prices; music is a relatively affordable consumer product. Furthermore, nowadays one can download digital files of songs for very little money and enjoy this music right away. There are many types of music playing devices, from fancy audio equipment to the **portable**（便于携带的） mp3 players. Whether people are working out at the gym or relaxing with friends at a party, digital music has become a **staple**（重要内容）.

To be sure, there are many art forms of value to us, such as cinema and literature. However, as we have seen from the examples above, the unique emotional impact of music and its widespread availability in digital format give music special importance.

苏珊评析

这道写作题的题意非常清晰，但讨论why music is important的文章并不好写，因为它属于审美层次上的赏析，这类话题本质上是很抽象的，不论用哪种语言都很难写。在这篇高分范文中，考生引用柏拉图“音乐是万物的灵魂”这一名言作为开头。然后从概括过渡到具体，说明音乐在人类生活中扮演重要角色是有其原因的。第二至第四段分别叙述不同的原因：音乐让人心情愉悦，人们喜欢伴随音乐的节奏跳舞或做其他肢体动作，音乐容易获取。在总结段，考生说还有许多其他重要的艺术形式。然后总结了前文提到的音乐对人们重要的原因，并增加了一个新观点，即音乐有特殊意义。

3 · Why do some students study...

Many students attend schools or universities far away from home. Why do some students study abroad?

Use specific reasons and details to explain your answer.

写作构思

Better education

Broader horizon

Life is an adventure

Learn a foreign language

Types of students

Culture

Prestige

高分范文3

Given a chance, most students would welcome an opportunity to study abroad, regardless of what their home country is. Students from developed nations who have relatively good educations might choose to study abroad for reasons different from students in developing countries, but the idea of going overseas is equally appealing to students of both groups.

Getting a better education is probably the most often cited reason for students in developing Asian nations to go overseas. It is true that higher education in the West is generally more rigorous, and that there are a large number of world-class scholars working at the research universities there. We all want to go to a school where we can study with the top minds in our field. Besides this, most great universities in the West have **unparalleled research facilities**（无与伦比的研究设备） which are hard to find in some developing nations. It is obvious that this combination of top scholars and great facilities is **a strong draw**（强大的吸引力） for students from other parts of the world.

For students from developed countries, culture is the reason given most often for overseas study. A college education is not only about the specific subjects one studies, it is also about broad exposure to people and ideas, looking at the world from different perspectives and shaping one's character. Thinking along these lines, a student will often feel that exposure to a different culture is **a useful complement to**（对.....的有用补充） the education he or she is receiving at home. The junior-year abroad experience is a typical example of this in an undergraduate education.

Aspiring（有抱负的） young people from both developing and developed countries seek to enhance their resumes by obtaining degrees from world-class universities. Thus, another reason why students go abroad is prestige. It seems having one degree from a top university in their own country is not enough, so they go to another top university in a different country and earn another degree there.

In general, then, it seems the experience of spending some of one's learning years in a foreign country has a positive effect for various student groups. In this global era, I think more and more people will take advantage of these overseas opportunities.

苏珊评析

表面上，这道写作题好像比较容易。可能所有考生都比较了解出国留学这个话题，因此也较熟悉该语境的单词和短语。然而，正是因为该话题可说的内容有很多，所以从某些方面来说，这道写作题又很难写。本科生和研究生的出国原因是不同的，不同专业和不同经济背景的学生的出国原因也是不同的。

为了让这个话题更容易处理，考生通过发展中国家和发达国家的差异来对留学目的进行分类（注意该方法和前面范文中有关正式团体和非正式团体的写作手法有何相似之处）。作文主体部分一直在讲留学目的的差异，第二段讲述亚洲发展中国家学生出国留学的原因。第三段转而讨论发达国家学生的出国留学原因。第三段开头的过渡很突出：**For students from developed countries, culture is the reason given most often for overseas study.**这是一种增强作文前后连贯的好方法。第四段讲述了发展中国家学生和发达国家学生出国留学的一个共同原因——通过拿国外学位获得声誉。因为作文主体部分非常详细，总结段可以简短一些：总结一下两个出国学习的好处便足够了。

4 · Why do they do this...

Many people enjoy visiting museums when they take trips. Why do they do this?

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

Curiosity

Educational value

Imagine ancient times

Art museums inspire us

More time to appreciate museums when on vacation

Shops

Priority of the host city or country

高分范文4

Museums, particularly the most famous ones, are major tourist attractions. A large amount of money and time have been invested in great museums, and so people generally accept that visiting them is a worthwhile exercise. There are many reasons why different individuals choose to go to a museum while traveling, but I will pick three in my discussion below.

Museums display items that people are curious about. In fact, early museums were often private collections of wealthy individuals, even monarchs. In previous eras, it was not easy for everyday people to obtain access to those collections. Then, as museums gradually opened their doors to the public, people became accustomed to exploring various museums to see what interesting **artifacts**（人工制品） they would find. Travelers want to take the time to see things that they can't see at home.

Another obvious reason why people are attracted to museums is the educational value associated with them. Science museums are popular among science lovers, art museums attract art **aficionados**（狂热爱好者） and history museums draw in history **buffs**（迷）. This profile of a museum visitor is a motivated learner who will not **pass up an opportunity to**（放弃.....的机会） learn more about something they are already interested in.

Gift items at museum gift shops are yet another reason why museums are popular. Some travelers buy **souvenirs**（纪念品） for their personal use, and others may feel they **are obligated to**（必须） give gifts to friends and family back home. Since museums tend to be viewed as part of the identity of their local city, people feel items bought at a particular museum represent the city or the country they have visited. Visiting a museum's gift shop is often a traveler's primary motive to visit a museum.

Any combination of these reasons could compel a traveler to pay a visit to a museum. Good museums offer visitors **a wealth of opportunities**（大量的机会） to explore new vistas in art, history and science. And while learning about new things is probably the primary driver for museum visits, everyone likes to get museum store souvenirs as well.

苏珊评析

本文紧扣题目，陈述了不同人群参观博物馆的不同原因。第二、三和四段分别陈述了

参观者不同的心理驱动因素：好奇心、学知识、去博物馆礼物店购物。总结段总结了之前陈述的观点：Any combination of these reasons could compel a traveler to pay a visit to a museum. 这个句子增强了文章的连贯性，因为它提到了前文说的原因，但没有一一列举。如果在此处再列举会使文章显得无趣，不能打动评分人。所以考生用自己的语言总结了上文提到的原因。

5 · Why do you think...

Why do you think some people engage in dangerous sports and other risky activities?
Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

- Psychological need for adrenaline rush
- Desire to push oneself
- Crave media attention
- Confident people
- Lengthy training so well prepared

高分范文5

To me, the people who take part in dangerous, potentially life-threatening athletic activities are somewhat crazy. Even though I admire their courage and their physical abilities, it is hard for me to understand why they continually put themselves at risk. However, there are clearly factors that cause certain people to pursue these activities.

One reason people do things like climb steep mountains and jump out of airplanes is that they enjoy **the rush of adrenaline**（一阵兴奋，激动） they get. They know the level of risk, and they may even be a little afraid. When they actually do these dangerous tasks, they overcome their fears, which is psychologically satisfying. Additionally, in certain extreme sports, athletes **crave**（热望，渴望） speed and become addicted to it. They say that dangerous speeds make them feel more "alive."

Another reason individuals engage in "extreme" sports is the desire to keep **pushing the limits**（超越极限）. Many athletes and explorers have **a burning need**（急需） to keep getting better and better. A swimmer wants to break the world record by swimming a faster race. To improve, there is little risk, just hard work. However, when an extreme skateboarder wants to break records, he or she jumps higher and does more twists, even though bones may get broken. Both the swimmer and the skater want to reach higher levels of achievement; it's just that the skater doesn't mind the risk.

Finally, we can probably all agree that many people involved in dangerous sports enjoy the attention they get from the media. In recent years, television programs have broadcast extreme sports events, which are very popular. The top athletes can become celebrities. Some fans go to the competitions to **cheer on**（为.....加油） each athlete as he or she does more and more challenging

jumps or runs. The athletes, who must work hard to be in good physical shape, probably enjoy the reward of having the public cheer their efforts. In addition, companies advertising sportswear or health drinks often ask top athletes to **endorse their products**（为他们的产品做广告宣传）. This leads to even more fame and a lot of money.

Although we cannot know for sure what drives individuals to engage in challenging physical ventures, it is obvious that their personalities are different from ours. They are willing to take risks that the average person is not, and that is why we watch them on television.

苏珊评析

在这篇范文中，考生一开始便说自己并不理解为什么有些人会去参加危险的活动。很显然，人们从事危险的活动是有原因的。第二、三和四段分别论述了不同的原因：兴奋、挑战极限的欲望和追求成名。最后一段重述第一段的观点，即自己不太理解为什么一些人喜欢从事危险活动。但显然，这些人的个性不同于普通人；这也就是我们在电视上看到这些人的原因。

建立自己的写作句型库

The primary motivation for people to join x is... 人们加入.....的最初动机是.....

The primary motivation for people to join informal groups is social.

拓展 The primary motivation for people to join industry associations is professional develoment.

In addition to VERBing, group members are able to VERB 除了.....外，组织成员还能.....

In addition to receiving moral support, group members are able to get timely practical advice from people in circumstances similar to their own.

拓展 In addition to getting information, group members are able to spend time with people just like them.

Compared to x members, people who choose to become members of y have... 与.....的成员相比，选择成为.....的成员会.....

Compared to informal group members, people who choose to become members of formal organizations have a wider range of reasons for their affiliations.

拓展 Compared to volunteer group members, people who choose to become members of industry organizations have economic incentives.

In short, there are many practical benefits of x 总之，.....有诸多实际好处

In short, there are many practical benefits of large organizations.

拓展 In short, there are many practical benefits of group membership.

Even in the 21st century, x is all around us and continues to play an important role in our lives, for many reasons. 即便在21世纪的今天，.....仍然伴随我们左右，并且基于多种原因，它将在我们的生活中继续发挥重要作用。

Even in the 21st century, music is all around us and continues to play an important role in our

lives, for many reasons.

拓展 Even in the 21st century, face-to-face communication is all around us and continues to play an important role in our lives, for many reasons.

First and foremost, x makes us feel good. 首先，.....使我们心情愉悦。

First and foremost, music makes us feel good.

拓展 First and foremost, being outdoors makes us feel good.

Yet another reason that x is integral to so many people's lives is that it is so ADJECTIVE 然而，.....对绝大多数人的生活必不可少的另一个原因是.....

Yet another reason that music is integral to so many people's lives is that it is so accessible.

拓展 Yet another reason that technology is integral to so many people's lives is that it is so addictive.

However, as we have seen from the examples above, the x of music and its y give music special importance. 可是，正如上文中的例子所示，音乐的.....以及.....特性使其变得极为重要。

However, as we have seen from the examples above, the unique emotional impact of music and its widespread availability in digital format give music special importance.

拓展 However, as we have seen from the examples above, the emotional content of music and its ability to make us dance give music special importance.

Given a chance, most students would welcome an opportunity to study abroad, regardless of... 如果有可能，绝大多数学生会乐于接受出国留学的机会，不管.....

Given a chance, most students would welcome an opportunity to study abroad, regardless of what their home country is.

拓展 Given a chance, most students would welcome an opportunity to study abroad, regardless of what they are studying.

x is probably the most often cited reason for students in developing Asian nations to go overseas.可能是亚洲发展中国家的学生出国留学最常提到的原因。

Getting a better education is probably the most often cited reason for students in developing Asian nations to go overseas.

拓展 Getting a degree in technology probably the most often cited reason for students in developing Asian nations to go overseas.

For x, y is the reason given most often for overseas study. 对于.....来说，.....是出国留学提到最多的原因。

For students from developed countries, culture is the reason given most often for overseas study.

For many students, getting an MBA is the reason given most often for overseas study.

Thus, another reason why students go abroad is x 因此，学生出国留学的另一个原因在于.....

Thus, another reason why students go abroad is prestige.

拓展 Thus, another reason why students go abroad is job insurance.

There are many reasons why different individuals choose to VERB, but I will pick three in

my discussion below. 不同人选择.....有很多原因，但我下面只列举其中的三种来讨论。

There are many reasons why different individuals choose to go to a museum while traveling, but I will pick three in my discussion below.

拓展 There are many reasons why different individuals choose to study abroad, but I will pick three in my discussion below.

x are yet another reason why museums are popular. 博物馆之所以如此受欢迎还因为.....

Gift items at museum gift shops are yet another reason why museums are popular.

拓展 Guided tours are yet another reason why museums are popular.

x is often a traveler's primary motive to visit a museum.经常是人们游览博物馆的主要动机。

Visiting a museum's gift shop is often a traveler's primary motive to visit a museum.

拓展 Seeing **ancient relics**（古迹） is often a traveler's primary motive to visit a museum.

Even though I admire their x, it is hard for me to understand why they VERB 虽然佩服他们的.....，但我很难理解他们为什么.....

Even though I admire their courage and their physical abilities, it is hard for me to understand why they continually put themselves at risk.

拓展 Even though I admire their determination, it is hard for me to understand why they devote themselves to these particular activities.

However, there are clearly factors that cause certain people to VERB 可是，促使人们.....显然是有原因的

However, there are clearly factors that cause certain people to pursue these activities.

拓展 However, there are clearly factors that cause certain people to listen to music.

Many x have a burning need to keep VERBing 许多.....急需.....

Many athletes and explorers have a burning need to keep getting better and better.

拓展 Many composers have a burning need to keep creating music.

Finally, we can probably all agree that many people involved in dangerous sports VERB 最后，大家可能都有同样的看法，许多从事危险运动的人.....

Finally, we can probably all agree that many people involved in dangerous sports enjoy the attention they get from the media.

拓展 Finally, we can probably all agree that many people involved in dangerous sports live each day for the moment.

14 "How": How does x influence y How is x different from y

如何应对How题型

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何利用指示词使文章衔接自然
- 解读常考题

这类题的典型题目是：How does x influence y和how is x different from y 。

在独立写作部分，How题型并不是很多，但考生也应该做好充分的准备。这类题型一般都比较简单，比如：How have views changed？在该语境中，how相当于In what way(s)。How题型一般要求考生描述一个过程、结果或者比较变化。考生需要给出一些细节。

最常见的How题型如下：

- 1 · People often VERB. **How** does this influence their ideas about x?
- 2 · Nowadays many people VERB. **How** have attitudes toward x changed?
- 3 · x is a problem. **How** can people improve this situation?
- 4 · Imagine that you were given x technology. **How** would you use this technology on your campus?

在写How作文时，经常需要用上by VERBing和through x这样的短语，如：

How can we help new students?

By counseling new students, we could put them at ease.

How can we best travel in the country?

Through train travel, we can appreciate the scenery.

How do clothes reflect a person's personality?

Clothes often represent a certain personality or style through their color; for example, bright red would probably be worn by an outgoing person.

有些How作文题要求讨论影响或结果。这些题可以用因果模式，如：

How have video games influenced children?

Some video games have caused young people to become violent.

还有一些How作文题要求对比两个事物，如：

How is a rural community different from an urban community?

People who live in the countryside tend to be easy-going, whereas city dwellers, crowded together, are often unfriendly.

苏珊举例

Directions:

Read the question below. You have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, an effective response will contain a minimum of 300 words.

Young children often enjoy watching television. How does television influence children's thoughts and behavior?

Use specific details to explain your answer.

这篇作文题要求考生谈论电视对孩子的影响。考生既可以谈论积极影响，也可以谈论消极影响，或者两者都讨论。这道题的难点是能不能提供足够多的问题和例子。同时，不要因为写得太多而失去了“流畅性”，或因为时间不够而完不成写作。

Exercise 1

根据上面例题的题目要求写一篇作文。初稿完成后，继续学习下部分的内容。仔细阅读高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

高分范文

写作构思

Negative influences:

Vulgar language

Violence

Commercials

Waste time

Positive influences:

Cartoons make kids laugh

Selective viewing

Educational programs

Gain skills

Parent explanations

高分范文

Some children spend many hours a day in front of the television. Because these young people are still in their **formative years**（性格形成期）, television watching is believed to have a great deal of influence on their development. Research studies have been conducted to understand the effects of various programs on children; for example, on **cognition**（认知） and personality. The results show that television is indeed a powerful influence, with many negative impacts.

For example, there are **adverse effects**（不良影响） when children view programs containing violence and sexual content. Movies shown on television, like their counterparts on the big screen, contain violent behavior, including fist-fights, guns and rude language. Some children imitate this behavior, consciously and unconsciously. Other children have nightmares, worrying about terrorist bombs.

Another negative impact of television on children comes from commercials. The constant advertisements that show children eating unhealthy foods and playing with expensive toys make young viewers want these foods and toys. They often pressure their parents to buy these things, even when they are harmful.

Perhaps the most regrettable influence is the time wasted when children mindlessly sit in front of the screen. When they do this, they are not getting any exercise, nor are they engaged in meaningful activities such as homework or club projects.

Of course, there are some programs which **exert a positive influence**（发挥积极影响） on children. Examples are Sesame Street and the science programs found on the Discovery Channel. From these, children can acquire practical skills, develop cognitive abilities and gain basic facts about nature, general science and culture. Even programs that target broad audiences can be beneficial to children if parents discuss the content with children in an appropriate way. For example, parents might sit with children to watch a news program and explain what is happening.

Interestingly, studies have shown that children's intellectual abilities are positively correlated to the number of hours of television watched, up to a certain point. On the other hand, excessive television deprives young children from physical exercise, leading to obesity, and violent content clearly influences behavior in harmful ways.

万用写作模板

〔开头用一个句子引出话题〕. Because these young people are still in their formative years, television watching is believed to have a great deal of influence on their _____. Research studies have been conducted to understand the effects of various programs on children; for example, _____. The results show that television is indeed _____.

For example, there are 〔形容词〕 effects when _____. 〔用两三个句子描述不良影响，添加一些细节信息〕.

Another 〔形容词〕 impact of television on children comes from _____. 〔用两三个句子描述不良影响，添加一些细节信息〕.

Perhaps the most 〔形容词〕 influence is _____. 〔用两三个句子描述不良影响，添加一些细节信息〕.

Of course, there are some programs which _____. Examples are _____ and _____. From these, children can acquire _____. 〔用两三个句子描述正面影响，添

加一些细节信息」.

Interestingly, studies have shown that _____. On the other hand, _____ clearly influences behavior in 「形容词」 ways.

第一段谈到有些儿童一天看好几个小时的电视。研究表明，电视对儿童有诸多负面影响。接下来的三段分别讲述负面影响：充满暴力的内容、大量不健康食品和昂贵玩具的商业广告和缺乏运动。第五段从优秀儿童节目的积极影响角度来写。总结段给出的事实让人吃惊，看电视的时长和儿童的智力直接相关。但考生紧接着说只有看电视时间达到一定的量后才会出现影响儿童智力这种情况。在这一要点后，考生重述了电视对儿童的两个负面影响。

★ PCC PCC学习方法 利用指示词来衔接

一篇衔接自然、前后连贯的作文就有可能得到4分以上的分数。

指示词是特指某一单词或事物的词。指示词有两种：指示代词和指示形容词，也叫“限定词”。指示代词和指示形容词都指代前面提到的事物——这就是它们有助于文章衔接自然的原因。

指示代词有四种：this，that，these和those。这些代词指代前面提到的名词或代词，以避免重复；例如，上篇高分范文中的these用法。

Of course, there are some programs which exert a positive influence on children. Examples are Sesame Street and the science programs found on the Discovery Channel. From these, children can acquire practical skills, develop cognitive abilities and gain basic facts about nature, general science and culture.

在上述句子中，指示代词these指放映的优秀电视节目，比如《芝麻街》和科学节目。this和these指在时间或空间上距离较近的事物；that和those则指时间和空间上距离较远的事物。

指示形容词修饰名词，如this plan和those students。这些名词短语的功能和指示代词的功能一样——指代一个具体的人、物体或观点，如：

Movies shown on television, like their counterparts on the big screen, contain violent behavior, including fist-fights, guns and rude language. Some children imitate this behavior, consciously and unconsciously.

在上述例子中，指示形容词this修饰名词behavior指代前面提到过的打架和说脏话等不良行为。

指示词并不难掌握。考生只需注意单复数一致和名词空间距离的远近。

再看一个指示形容词的例子，摘自本章的高分范文：

Yet young people need someone knowledgeable to confide in when they run into problems at school. To address this need, teachers and counselors should proactively set up appointments to meet with the new student.

在上述句子中，**this need**指的是年轻人需要有可信任的人这件事。指示词的运用使上下两句的语义衔接紧密、句子的表达流畅。

在新托福写作考试中，指示形容词（名词短语）可能比简单的指示代词更有用，因为前者更具体。评分人看重作文的表达是否清晰，指示形容词能够做到这一点。

- 通过指示词使作文衔接自然的策略：
 1. 使用指示代词和指示形容词时，要考虑单复数一致和空间距离的远近。
 2. 指示代词代替名词或名词短语。
 3. 指示形容词表明人、物体或观点是前面提到的具体的人、物体和观点。
 4. 定冠词也可以让作文衔接自然，所以可以交替使用定冠词和指示词。

建立自己的写作句型库

Because these young people are still in their formative years, television watching is believed to have a great deal of influence on their x 因为这些青少年仍处于性格形成的阶段，看电视会对他们的.....产生很大影响

Because these young people are still in their formative years, television watching is believed to have a great deal of influence on their development.

拓展 Because these young people are still in their formative years, television watching is believed to have a great deal of influence on their physical condition.

For example, there are adverse effects when children view programs containing x 例如，儿童收看含有.....内容的电视节目会有负面影响

For example, there are adverse effects when children view programs containing violence and sexual content.

拓展 For example, there are adverse effects when children view programs containing adult content.

Another negative impact of television on children comes from x 电视对儿童的另一个负面影响源于.....

Another negative impact of television on children comes from commercials.
拓展 Another negative impact of television on children comes from horror movies.

Perhaps the most regrettable influence is... 最令人惋惜的影响可能是.....
Perhaps the most regrettable influence is the time wasted when children mindlessly sit in front of the screen.

拓展 Perhaps the most regrettable influence is the junk food that gets eaten and the lack of exercise.

Even programs that VERB can be beneficial to children if... 如果.....，甚至有一些.....的节目也有益儿童成长

Even programs that target broad audiences can be beneficial to children if parents discuss the content with children in an appropriate way.

拓展 Even programs that contain some fighting can be beneficial to children if they are

presented in a historical context.

Exercise 2

学完高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的技能修改你的初稿，并认真看修改之处。然后用学到的新句型去练习下面五道预测题的写作。

写作预测题

1 · How does x influence...

Many people think that weather influences people's moods and behavior. How does weather influence you in your daily life?

Use specific details to explain your answer.

写作构思

Like warm weather

Sunlight and longer days

Cold and gray makes me want to hibernate

Light deprivation leads to depression

England—rainy climate so British reserved?

高分范文1

The area where I live has four distinct seasons: Spring, summer, autumn and winter. The weather is therefore very different throughout the year. Furthermore, in recent years weather patterns have become very strange and unpredictable, perhaps due to greenhouse gases. I have found that varying weather conditions affect me profoundly, both mentally and physically.

First, I should confess that I prefer warm weather. That means I am happiest in late spring and summer. I find I wake up earlier, probably because the days are longer. The sunlight comes shining into my window and somehow I am eager to hop out of bed, ready to start my day. Outside, the birds are singing and flowers are starting to grow. How can one not feel energetic? The sunshine makes me feel more alert all day long.

Not only do I like the bright light; I like the heat. Many people cannot handle hot weather and complain that extreme heat makes them get headaches and become fatigued. Personally, however, I vastly prefer hot temperatures to the alternative.

Cold weather makes me want to stay in bed. If I could, I would **hibernate**（冬眠） for the entire winter season. It's true that snow is beautiful, but after the first snowfall, I don't enjoy winter days very much. The sky is often gray, which is depressing, especially when it continues day after day. For some reason, the short days of winter make me feel **trapped**（受限制的） and somewhat **claustrophobic**（感觉幽闭恐惧的）.

I can't imagine living in a place where it is always dark, cold and rainy; for example, places such as England and northern Germany. Cold rain is worse than snow! I think I would become a miserable person if I had to live in that kind of climate. However, I know many people who feel the opposite from me. Some people love extremely cold weather. In fact, some people love rain, saying that rain washes the streets clean. Thus, it is clear that individuals vary tremendously in terms of how each person reacts to weather conditions.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生讨论天气对人们情绪的影响，和上一道电视对儿童的影响写作题有相似之处。前一篇作文写电视如何影响儿童，而这篇作文必须写天气如何影响人们的情绪。这意味着考生需要描述天气状况及考生对此的感受。注意句子：I have found that varying weather conditions affect me profoundly, both mentally and physically.这个句子提醒读者下文讨论天气对人们心理和生理的影响，因此这个过渡句起到了增强本文衔接性和连贯性的作用。

在第一段，考生谈了自己居住地的气候，为接下来的四段做了一个铺垫。第二段主要讲述考生喜欢温暖的气候，描述了温暖气候的特征和自己的感受。第三段在第二段的基础上，进一步说明自己还喜欢炎热的天气。这使句式变得复杂，文章读起来更有趣味。第四段谈寒冷的天气，可以预见这种天气考生并不喜欢。注意考生如何描述自己对这种天气的感受。最后一段继续讨论寒冷天气，但明确说自己不喜欢这种气候。本文的结论只有一句：Thus, it is clear that individuals vary tremendously in terms of how each person reacts to weather conditions.尽管结论很短，但之前的段落写得非常详尽，集中谈论了自己喜欢的气候以及气候如何影响自己的情绪，因此一句话的总结足够衔接整篇文章。

切记，在考试中如果时间不够用，考生可以用一句话来总结全文。

2 · How have people changed...

Many people have pets these days, including cats, dogs and other small animals. How have people's attitudes towards pets changed in recent times?

Use specific reasons and examples to explain your answer.

写作构思

- Small dogs are popular
- Dog and cats on farms
- Don't discipline animals so they misbehave
- Socialization – People walk dogs together
- Pets in cities
- Smaller families

When I went home for my summer vacation, I noticed that practically everyone who lives in my parent's apartment building had a cat or a dog. Small dogs seemed to be especially popular. At dusk, after work, my neighbors could be seen **walking their dogs**（遛狗） **within the apartment compound**（在公寓楼的院子里）. Ten years ago, this scene would have been virtually impossible. That is because people nowadays seem to treat dogs and other pets as members of the family.

For example, owners these days often let their dogs and cats sleep with them at night in their bedrooms. In earlier times, animals would never have been allowed into a person's bedroom. In fact, **in farming communities**（在农业社会）, animals were never allowed into the home; they had to stay outside. This is because in a rural society, cats and dogs are supposed to work outside. Cats kill **rodents**（啮齿动物） and dogs help **herd**（牧放） cows and sheep, as well as guard the home against unwanted strangers. From this, we can see that previous generations considered cats and dogs to be dirty creatures that belonged outside, together with the other farm animals.

There are several reasons why people have allowed pets into their homes in recent times. For one thing, more people are living in cities now, and their **economic standing**（经济状况） has vastly improved. In cities, cats and dogs don't have any "farm work," such as catching mice or herding sheep. The animals' owners usually keep them inside to protect them from getting lost or hit by cars.

Another reason that owners are becoming closer to their pets is that people are having fewer children. A cat or dog is in some ways like another "child." A pet can **provide companionship**（做伴） to people, regardless of their age. Pets also make life more lively and interesting. Pets do tricks and make us laugh. In turn, people buy their pets small toys and special treats.

Thus, we can see that our new **preoccupation with**（心系，念念不忘） pets reflects a transition from an agricultural to an urban society. It also reflects a move toward a relatively **affluent society**（富足社会） with smaller families, where people can afford to spoil their animals.

苏珊评析

考生会经常遇到这类独立写作题：How have attitudes towards x changed？对于这类How题型，考生要比较过去和当前的状况、过去和当前的态度，并说出变化的原因。如果考生能够给出足够的细节，就能取得高分。

在这篇范文中，为了让第一段更有趣，考生讲述父母公寓楼的院子内有许多宠物，并给出了细节，如小型犬特别受欢迎。为了使该段衔接自然，考生是这么写的：Ten years ago, this scene would have been virtually impossible. That is because people nowadays seem to treat dogs and other pets as members of the family.这两句为下文的比较做了铺垫（十年前和现在），并大致说明了变化原因。为了紧扣how have attitudes changed，第二段描述了一种变化——允许宠物在卧室里睡觉。第三段说明了宠物主人让宠物进家门的原因——从农村生活方式到城市公寓的转变。第四段列举了当前社会宠物主人和宠物更亲近的原因——他们的孩子少了。第四段翔实的理由紧扣How have attitudes changed，评分人会注意到这一点。总结段总结了人类和宠物关系更亲密的原因。

3 · How can x help...

Moving to a new school can be stressful for students. How can schools help students who have changed schools?

Use specific reasons and examples to explain your answer.

写作构思

New set of friends

New teachers

Assign an old student to be a "sponsor" for semester

Have each new student join one club

Different curriculum

Safety net

高分范文3

Moving to a new school is often a **traumatic experience**（痛苦的经历） for a student. Young people tend to rely on a circle of friends as they learn to master the skills of dealing with people. When students are abruptly plunged into a completely new environment, they often find it hard to adjust in the beginning. Whenever possible, the school should actively monitor and support the new student's transition.

Several problems present themselves in a student's adjustment to a new school. First, as it is difficult or unpractical to maintain close contact with old friends, the student has to quickly find **compatible people**（合得来的人）. Making friends can be a long and **trying process**（困难的过程） when you are the only unfamiliar face in a group of people. One thing the school can do is organize activities with the express purpose of introducing the newcomer to his or her classmates. This might very well encourage existing students to reach out to the new classmate, paving the way for the formation of new friendships.

The next challenge is the change in teachers and counselors. Young people work better with adults whom they trust; they tend to be shy when faced with unfamiliar adults. Yet young people need someone knowledgeable to **confide in**（信任） when they **run into problems**（遇到困难） at school. To address this need, teachers and counselors should **proactively**（主动地） set up appointments to meet with the new student. The meeting does not have to be long; the main purpose is to let new students know that the school is there for them, available for consultation whenever there is a need.

Additional **hurdles**（困难） that new students may face include adjusting to the new curriculum and worrying about being able to compete with other students. In these situations, as in the challenges discussed above, the school needs to reach out to the new student and offer help before help is needed. If that can be done, the student will realize that there is a safety net in place as he or she looks for ways to fit into the new environment.

苏珊评析

这道写作题实质上是问学校如何帮助转校新生适应新环境：How can schools help students who have changed schools？因此这篇作文必须包含详细的步骤以及采取这些步骤的原因或依据。

第一段先说学生转校是一种痛苦的经历，然后描述可能会遇到的情况，到这里读者开始理解，转学学生需要得到哪些方面的帮助。Whenever possible, the school should actively monitor and support the new student's transition.这一句使本文很自然地过渡到下一段内容，即步骤。第二段和第三段分别表述了新生可能会遇到的问题或困难，学校应如何帮助新生融入集体、适应新环境。总结段又提出了新生可能会遇到的两种困境，紧接着指出，跟上文提到的所有问题的解决方法一样，学校应联系新生，及时提供帮助。最后一句点明学校这么做的原因。

4 · How does x differ from y...

Each generation of young people is different. How does your generation differ from your parents' generation?

Use specific reasons and examples to explain your answer.

写作构思

New Generation

Technology, computers, Internet

Packaged food, junk food, microwave

Better economic situation

Doesn't understand or appreciate old art forms

Leisurely lifestyle

高分范文4

When we are teenagers, we think we know everything and that we are special. We think our entire generation is unique, and perhaps in some ways it is. It is likely, however, that our parents felt the same way when they were teenagers. This said, it is true that the world in which my parents grew up was very different from my world.

Perhaps the most profound difference between my generation and my parents' is the **pervasiveness of technology**（科技的普及）. The wide impact of personal computers, mobile devices and the Internet have allowed young people today to be linked to each other and the world in ways never imagined. My father and mother had to rely on a landline telephone and occasionally a fax machine. For them, a "social network" meant a group of neighbors getting together for a barbecue. They did not have mobile phones. When they communicated with other people, it was usually in person.

Another significant difference between our generations is food—what we eat and how we prepare it. In my parents' time, there were no microwave ovens. People did not go out to restaurants very often. Rather, they ate simple home-cooked meals. The family meals my mother prepared were not fancy, but we sat down together every evening to eat. In contrast, my generation eats at irregular times. Sometimes we grab a sandwich or some other "junk food." It is no coincidence that my generation suffers more from obesity.

Finally, my father and mother had a more leisurely lifestyle, even though neither of them came from wealthy families. However, when my parents were young, they played after school with other children in nearby parks. In the summer, they went to my grandparents' home and relaxed. When I was a child, I felt a lot of pressure to study and often participated in **structured activities**（安排的活动） like piano lessons and karate. My generation also had tutors to help us get higher scores on our exams. In contrast, my parents just studied on their own, without tutors.

As I have described, my parents' lives were quite different from my own. In many ways, they lived in simpler times. To be sure, there was less technology, but people seemed to have time to have a nice family meal and enjoy one another. To me, this pace of life seems vastly preferable to the **rat race**（激烈的竞争） of the 21st century.

苏珊评析

这篇非常连贯的范文描述了两代人之间的差异。第一段很有趣，因为该段描述了每个年代青少年的“自恋情结”。在说完了两代人之间的相同点后，考生说实际上这两代人差异较大，为接下来几段的对比做了铺垫。第二段至第四段分别描述了考生这一代和其父母这一代的差异。这些差异表现在：现代通讯科技使两代人在社交方式上的差异较大；饮食习惯不同；业余时间从事的活动也不同。总结段重申观点，即这两代人差异较大，然后总结了作文主体部分的分论点。同时，考生表明了自己的观点：更喜欢上一代人的生活节奏。

5 · How would you...

Imagine that you have received a large sum of money to give to the charity of your choice. How would you use this money?

Use specific details to explain your answer.

写作构思

- Help disaster victims
- Save pandas and their habitats
- Use money to set up educational foundation
- Help poor children
- Dorm and classroom building
- Staff

As a college student, when I am not studying, I am often participating in university clubs. One of these activities is a volunteer group where students tutor children. These children come from poor families and don't have a proper school. Consequently, if I received a large sum of money, I would use it to create an educational foundation for the children's education.

I would begin by using a portion of the money awarded me to build a **modern boarding school complex**（一座现代的寄宿学校综合楼群）. I **envision**（设想） a student dormitory building with comfortable bedrooms and clean showers and bathrooms. The dormitory rooms would be wired for the Internet, and laptops would be provided for student use. The school building would have a large teachers' lounge where faculty could drink tea and relax. Classroom windows would be large, so that light could shine in. This state-of-the-art classroom building would be equipped with a computer lab, a library and a gymnasium.

With the remainder of the gift money, I would hire and train a full-time person to work for the foundation. The job would **entail**（势必造成） promoting the educational foundation and **soliciting**（请求给予） additional donations from people around the city. The ideal person for this job would be enthusiastic, socially minded and good with children and adults. If this employee could successfully bring in funds, that extra money could be spent on textbooks, school uniforms and lunch subsidies.

As soon as this infrastructure was **in place**（准备就绪）, the elementary students could begin attending school there. Teachers could work with local education officials to make sure the curriculum was as good as possible and the school was up to standards. Student volunteers from my university could continue to do tutoring in the subjects that are difficult for them. For example, we could help them with English, mathematics and science. I believe that this way of allocating the financial gift would be an excellent investment, providing many children with an improved learning environment.

苏珊评析

这道写作题是一道假设情形题。题目假设考生收到一大笔钱，问怎么利用这些钱，因此这篇作文应该用虚拟语气（I would spend the money on...）。

范文第一段中，考生先交代自己做义务支教的情况，自然过渡到中心观点：Consequently, if I received a large sum of money, I would use it to create an educational foundation for the children's education.文章接下来描述这些钱究竟怎么花。第二段和第三段分别详细描述了自己要建一所寄宿学校、这所学校的基础设施建设和员工聘用等。最后一段继续说明学校的运行，提到校友担任义务支教者，呼应第一段。最后一句重申论点，强调这笔钱应该用于创办这么一所学校。

建立自己的写作句型库

I have found that x affect me profoundly, both mentally and physically. 我发现.....对我的心理与生理都有极大的影响。

I have found that varying weather conditions affect me profoundly, both mentally and physically.

拓展 I have found that eating healthy food at home affects me profoundly, both mentally and physically.

x makes me feel more alert all day long.使我一整天都保持敏锐的思维。

The sunshine makes me feel more alert all day long.

拓展 Jogging in the morning makes me feel more alert all day long.

For some reason, x make me feel ADJECTIVE and somewhat ADJECTIVE. 出于某种原因，.....让我觉得.....，并且稍微有几分.....

For some reason, the short days of winter make me feel trapped and somewhat claustrophobic.

拓展 For some reason, studying independently makes me feel bored and alone.

Thus, it is clear that individuals vary tremendously in terms of how each person reacts to x 因此，每个人对.....的反应差异性很大，这是显而易见的

Thus, it is clear that individuals vary tremendously in terms of how each person reacts to weather conditions.

拓展 Thus, it is clear that individuals vary tremendously in terms of how each person reacts to living in a big city.

That is because people nowadays seem to VERB 那是因为如今人们似乎.....

That is because people nowadays seem to treat dogs and other pets as members of the family.

拓展 That is because people nowadays seem to enjoy taking risks.

From this, we can see that previous generations considered x to be y 我们由此可知过去那一代人把.....看作.....

From this, we can see that previous generations considered cats and dogs to be dirty creatures that belonged outside, together with the other farm animals.

拓展 From this, we can see that previous generations considered eating at home to be an important thing.

There are several reasons why people have VERBed in recent times. 近来，人们之所以会.....是有原因的。

There are several reasons why people have allowed pets into their homes in recent times.

拓展 There are several reasons why people have become less physically active in recent times.

Thus, we can see that x reflects a transition from an agricultural to an urban society. 因此，我们可以发现.....反映了社会由农业型向都市型的转型。

Thus, we can see that our new preoccupation with pets reflects a transition from an agricultural to an urban society.

拓展 Thus, we can see that modern architecture reflects a transition from an agricultural to an urban society.

Whenever possible, the school should VERB the new student's transition. 学校应尽可能随时.....新生的过渡。

Whenever possible, the school should actively monitor and support the new student's transition.

拓展 Whenever possible, the school should ease the new student's transition.

If that can be done, the student will realize that there is x as he or she looks for ways to fit into the new environment. 如果能够做到这一点，当学生试图融入新环境的过程中会意识到.....

If that can be done, the student will realize that there is a safety net in place as he or she looks

for ways to fit into the new environment.

拓展 If that can be done, the student will realize that there is help available as he or she looks for ways to fit into the new environment.

Perhaps the most profound difference between my generation and my parents' is... 也许，我们这代人同父辈最大的不同在于.....

Perhaps the most profound difference between my generation and my parents' is the pervasiveness of technology.

拓展 Perhaps the most profound difference between my generation and my parents' is the fast pace of life nowadays.

It is no coincidence that my generation suffers more from x 我这一代人遭受更多.....
绝非偶然

It is no coincidence that my generation suffers more from obesity.

拓展 It is no coincidence that my generation suffers more from stress.

Consequently, if I received a large sum of money, I would use it to VERB 所以，如果我得到一大笔钱，我将用它.....

Consequently, if I received a large sum of money, I would use it to create an educational foundation for the children's education.

拓展 Consequently, if I received a large sum of money, I would use it to invest in the stock market.

15 "Hypothetical if": If you could change one thing If you could x

如何应对假设性题型

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 描述假设性情景的具体语言策略
- 解读常考题

典型题型：If you could change one thing和If you could x。

独立写作题中，假设性题型是最有趣的一种题型。因为考生要想象一种情形，可以自由地写自己喜欢的话题。但在语法上，假设性题型是对考生的一种挑战。表达假设的语法并不简单，要使用特定的动词形式。本章会重点讲这部分的知识。

假设性作文题通常有以下几种形式：

- 1 · If you could VERB, what would you do?
- 2 · If you were asked to [choose a piece of art that best represents your country], what would you [choose]?
- 3 · If you were a [university president], what kind of person would you hire to be a [professor]?

先来看一看假设性题型的例子。

苏珊举例

Directions:

Read the question below. You have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, an effective response will contain a minimum of 300 words.

If you could create a new invention, what product would you make?

Use specific details to explain why this invention is necessary.

这道写作题假设进行一项创造发明，问“你”最想创造什么。从某个角度来说，这道写作题也是一道Why题型写作题，因为该题有一层隐含的意思：Why this invention is necessary?一篇优秀的作文应该往能满足现实需求的物品上想，还需要提供几个例子说明某项创造发明对人类的意义。

Exercise 1

根据上面例题的题目要求写一篇作文。初稿完成后，继续学习下部分的内容。仔细阅读高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

高分范文

写作构思

Machine that could accurately translate audio input

Use it to translate foreign languages

Spacecraft to travel in space

Speed of light

Resources

Emigration

高分范文

If I were able to create something new and revolutionary, it would be a spacecraft that travels at close to the speed of light. The availability of such a vehicle would serve many purposes, chief of which are outlined below.

First, this vehicle would give us the ability to explore **far-flung**（遥远的）places in the universe, so that we could look for things that we need back on Earth. As we all know, many of the natural resources we rely on are fast depleting. Examples are oil, coal and uranium. Even though scientists are trying hard to develop renewable energy sources, would it not be nice to have more of the traditional energy sources? Planets such as Mars, for example, may have concentrated mineral ores with great **concentrations**（富集）of precious **metal ores**（金属矿石）.

Second, the invention would allow us to travel around the universe. People love to travel. Many of us have experiences visiting beautiful or exotic places, but why should we limit ourselves to places on Earth? Space tourism has always been something that businesses and potential tourists have wanted. I have no doubt that there are many weird and wonderful places beyond our solar system, just waiting for us to discover and enjoy.

Finally, my new vehicle might just be what we need to find the next home for humanity. Some people estimate that the Earth will continue to provide a livable habitat for oxygen-based animals, including humans, for another 500 million years. It seems inevitable that our descendants will have to emigrate to some other planet before that time comes. Without a fast **intergalactic transport**（星际运输）, it will be unlikely that humans can ever find a future home.

To **recap**（重述，概括）, through my spacecraft, I would like to better the future of humanity. Both the commercial exploitation of distant resources and the development of space tourism would add value to our lives. Most importantly, my invention would enable us to find a compatible safe haven before the **demise**（消亡） of planet Earth, allowing us to prepare for our eventual emigration to that planet.

万用写作模板

If I were able to create something new and revolutionary, it would be a 〔一项发明〕 that _____. The availability of such a _____ would serve many purposes, chief of which are outlined below.

First, this _____ would give us the ability to _____, so that we could _____. As we all know, [用两三个句子来描述第一个用处的必要性].

Second, the invention would allow us to _____. [用两三个句子来描述第二个用处的必要性].

Finally, my new _____ might just be what we need to _____. [用两三个句子来描述第三个用处的必要性].

To recap, through my _____, I would like to better the future of humanity. Both the [改述第一个用处] and the [改述第二个用处]. Most importantly, my invention would enable us to [改述第三个用处], allowing us to [进一步阐述第三个用处].

在这篇高分范文的第一段，考生说想创建一艘飞行速度近似光速的宇宙飞船。第二段至第四段分别描述了宇宙飞船的用处：开采外星球上的能源、太空旅行以及为地球不适宜人类居住时做准备。总结段先笼统地说了说发明宇宙飞船的原因（... I would like to better the future of humanity.），然后总结了上文提到的三个用处。注意考生把最重要的用处放在最后来说明。

★ 赋能技能 微观篇章技能：描述假设性情形

新托福考试独立写作题常要求考生讨论假设性情形，例如：If you could creat a new holiday, what would it be？但就像前面所说的，假设性作文的语言规范比较不好掌握。很多考生可能都知道条件句的语法规则，但真正运用的时候，有些考生就不知道如何正确使用虚拟条件句了。

在假设性题型中，考生几乎都要用到虚拟条件句（问偏爱的What would you do？题型也同样）。用陈述语气I will...来回答假设性题型是不正确的。这一点要切记，因为许多考生都会犯这一错误。

- 1· 描述假设性情形需要掌握三个方面的知识
 - 1) 如何用独立从句和非独立从句写出复杂的句式。
 - 2) 如何写出虚拟条件句。
 - 3) 作文中如何灵活运用虚拟条件句和陈述句两种句式。
- 2· 假设性题型的典型错误表达

写作题	正确表达	错误表达
If you could create a new holiday, what would it be?	I would create a day for health.	I <u>hope people have</u> a day for health.
	I would like to create a day for health.	I <u>will</u> create a day for health.
	A Health Day could be created.	A Health Day <u>can</u> be created.
	A day celebrating good health might be created.	A Health Day <u>may</u> be created.

从上述例子可以看出，如果题目是假设性作文题，那么文中的时态应用相同的时态，即虚拟条件句的时态。作文中的所有例子和原因也用相同的时态。

注意上面这个表格，“错误表达”栏里的句子如果单独出现都是正确的。但在一篇假设性语境的作文里，这些动词形式则是错误的。

3 · 假设性题型作文里的情态动词

需要运用虚拟条件句的写作题，考生要用情态动词would，could，should和might。would用来表达喜好与意愿；could用来表达可能性。

would在独立写作中可以有两种语法形式：Subject + would + VERB和Subject + would + VERB + infinitive VERB，如：

If I could create an invention...
I **would** invent a robot.

If I could create an invention...
I **would** choose to invent a robot.
I **would** love to invent a robot.

在独立写作的假设性题型作文中，考生应该避免使用can和may，而应该使用can的过去式could或may的过去式might。这些情态动词表明某人假设做某事。

在假设的语境里，could和might的用法是：Subject + could + VERB和Subject + might + VERB，如：

The holiday **could** educate people about good health practices.
The invention **might** help senior citizens move around town.

此处情态动词could和might解释在假设情境里某种情况会呈现什么状况，这会在段落中起到非常好的论证效果。

改变一下上述用法，可以增加副词maybe和possibly，如：
The money **could possibly** be used for orphans.
If I had time, **maybe I would** travel to Australia.

总之，在虚拟条件句中，考生要正确使用情态动词，尤其是描述要做的事情时。但讨论事实情况时，考生要用陈述语气。下面来看一段从以上高分范文中摘取的内容：

First, this vehicle **would** give us the ability to explore far-flung places in the universe, so that we **could** look for things that we need back on Earth. As we all know, many of the natural resources we rely on **are** fast depleting. Examples **are** oil, coal and uranium. Even though scientists **are trying** hard to develop renewable energy sources, **would** it not be nice to have more of the traditional energy sources? Planets such as Mars, for example, **may have** concentrated mineral ores with great concentrations of precious metal ores.

加粗的动词形式是虚拟条件句里的情态动词。考生通过这些情态动词告诉读者自己想要什么或者认为可能的情况。加框的动词形式是陈述语气形式，表明事实情况，例如：many of the natural resources we rely are fast depleting是一个客观事实。最后一句用了may have，因为考生认为这个陈述是对现实的推测。

- 假设性题型的策略：
 - 1 · 掌握独立从句和非独立从句的复杂句式。
 - 2 · 要会写虚拟条件句。
 - 3 · 学会用来表达偏爱或意愿的情态动词would的基本用法，并多加练习，如：If I were given a sum of money, I would buy my parents a house.
 - 4 · 学会用来表达可能性的情态动词could和might的基本用法，并多加练习，如：The holiday could teach people about the space program.
 - 5 · 考试时仔细看清题目意思，确定题目是假设性题型还是要用虚拟语气的其他题目类型。
 - 6 · 看题目时，注意题目中是否有would，如：Would you like to travel somewhere you have never been before？这是作文里需要用情态动词would的提示。
 - 7 · 可以在could和might句子中加上副词maybe和possibly，使句式多样化。
 - 8 · 虚拟条件句要用情态动词，而事实性句子则用陈述语气的动词形式。

建立自己的写作句型库

If I were able to create something new and revolutionary, it would be a(n) x that VERB
如果我能创造出突破性的新事物，那将会是.....

If I were able to create something new and revolutionary, it would be a spacecraft that travels at close to the speed of light.

拓展 If I were able to create something new and revolutionary, it would be a drug that could cure cancer.

To recap, through my x, I would like to better the future of humanity. 简要回顾，通过我的.....，我希望人类的明天更美好。

To recap, through my spacecraft, I would like to better the future of humanity.
拓展 To recap, through my new drug, I would like to better the future of humanity.

Exercise 2

稿，并认真看修改之处。然后用学到的新句型去练习下面五道预测题的写作。

写作预测题

1 · If you could create...

Many holidays call attention to important issues. If you could create a new holiday, what cause would you celebrate? What would people do on that holiday?

Use specific reasons and details to support your answer.

写作构思

- Senior Citizen Day
- Good Neighbor Day
- Reach out to lonely people
- Make a good community
- Home Day
- Mother Nature
- Abundance
- Fragile

高分范文1

If I had an opportunity to create a new holiday, I would use it to **heighten people's awareness**（增强人们的意识） of **the fragility of the Earth's environment**（地球环境的脆弱）. My holiday would honor Mother Nature, who endowed us with the rich but fragile environment in which we live. I would name my holiday "Home Day" to emphasize that the Earth is our common home.

Aside from the Sun, we obtain everything we need to survive from the Earth. From the rich **fauna and flora**（动植物） which provide us with food, to the minerals and energy sources which allow us to build our modern society, the Earth's natural resources sustain us. I cannot imagine living without the material abundance of the Earth. Moreover, the physical environment of this planet is both dramatic and soothing. When I travel into the mountains, I am often struck by the sheer beauty of the natural landscape.

However, in spite of its beauty, the Earth is extremely fragile. I see everywhere the destruction humans have brought to the environment: Smoggy air filled with pollutants, rivers **churning**（翻腾） with **dirt and silt**（污物和淤泥） because of deforestation and entire hillsides littered with man-made garbage. Less obvious, but perhaps more dangerous to living creatures are our waters, which are slowly being poisoned by chemicals and the greenhouse effect. These destructive forces need to be reversed.

If I could, I would make Home Day a national holiday so people could have a day off to enjoy nature or attend educational events. Companies could sponsor events throughout the country and promote their own **environmentally friendly products**（环保产品）.

There is a saying that "Ignorance brings destruction, whereas education brings protection." Through the **enactment**（通过） of

Home Day, we could educate ourselves. Our citizens would learn to be good stewards of the land we inhabit so future generations can enjoy the abundant resources and beauty the Earth has to offer.

苏珊评析

这道假设性写作题要求考生假设可以创立一个新节日。高分作文应包含三个方面的内容：提出一个有意义的节日、给出充分的理由并描述节日当天要开展的活动。

在这篇高分范文中，第一段先说明创立节日的目的（to heighten people's awareness of the fragility of the Earth's environment），然后告诉读者要创立什么样的节日。第二段描述了地球丰富的自然资源和美景。第三段描述污染和其他人类活动对地球的毁灭性破坏。在第四段，考生针对题目中What would people do on that holiday做了陈述。总结段非常有力。先是一个引语，接下来强调进行保护地球生态系统教育的必要性。

2 · If you could change...

If you could change one thing about your living accommodations, what would you change?
Use reasons and specific examples to support your answer.

写作构思

Parents' apartment

Street noise

Pollution

Add a shower to the bathroom

Just a bathtub now, want a hot shower

高分范文2

I am generally satisfied with my living accommodations, for I have a fairly large space in my parents' downtown apartment. My room is nicely decorated, according to my wishes, and the apartment has all the modern **amenities**（便利设施） one could hope for. There is just one thing that bothers me: the location. If it were possible, I would pack up all my things and move to a different place.

The first problem solved by the move would be noise. There is a terrible **racket**（吵闹声） coming from the street below my room. Not far from our building is a street market where vendors gather before daybreak. They are a noisy **bunch**（一群人）, calling out to advertise their low prices. There is also the **honking**（汽车的喇叭声） of passing cars; the drivers are angry at the traffic jams. Even though the vendors are supposed to use the sidewalk, they put their carts in the narrow street, which blocks the flow of cars. The uncivilized drivers **honk their horns**（按汽车喇叭） persistently just to **vent their anger**（宣泄他们的愤怒）. It is enough to drive anyone crazy.

The second problem that would go away is pollution. Our city is an old industrial town. Steel mills and coal mines line the outskirts

of the city, making the air gray and heavy. Consequently, I can never leave my room windows open. If I do, even for half an hour, I end up cleaning for hours. My furniture, bedding and audio equipment are covered with a layer of soot and dust. I would not have this problem if I could move to the small mountain town where one of my classmates lives. Although the town is not as prosperous as my city, they leave their windows open throughout the day. Sitting in their apartments, one can enjoy the fresh breezes blowing into the window.

I love my city because I have grown up here. I have gotten used to its rhythms and customs. Nevertheless, I would be happy to give everything here up for a quieter and cleaner environment. I am sure that once I settled down in the new town, I would be very comfortable there.

苏珊评析

这道假设题同时也是一道**What**题型，因为该题要求考生说一说自己住所的问题以及改善措施。高分作文一般都会举例说明改善措施，可能还会对比改善前后的情景。对比中可以对不同特点作正面或负面评价。

在这篇高分范文中，考生详细描述了目前居住的公寓。提到了公寓的几个优点和让人难以忍受的缺陷，即地理位置。第二段和第三段分别描述了缺陷：周边的吵闹和空气污染。在第三段，考生特别提到了一个地方——一个同学居住的山区小镇。在总结段，考生说自己很喜欢目前居住的城市，但仍下定决心找一个安静、环境干净的地方居住。

3 · If you could ask someone...

If you could ask a celebrity one question, what would you ask? Give detailed reasons to support your choice.

写作构思

Genetically modified food

Public debate

Scientific facts

Ask Johnny Depp what his proudest moment was

Understand his value system

高分范文3

If I had a chance to ask a celebrity a question, I would ask about genetically modified foods (also known as GM foods). Specifically, I would pose this question: "Do you think GM foods are all right? Why or why not?"

Quite frankly, I would be curious about how the celebrity would respond to this kind of question. I would not be surprised if the celebrity had strong feelings on the matter but could not provide any **legitimate reasons**（合理的原因） to support those feelings. My experience is that people in general don't have knowledge of the facts on this important topic. For example, most of them are not

aware that when a certain gene is inserted into a crop such as cotton, farmers can grow this crop using very little pesticide. It would be interesting to see if the celebrity is as uninformed as ordinary folks.

Because of the importance of food economics, I would try to use this opportunity to publicize the issue. No matter what the celebrity's response was, it would be good to debate the issue. If the celebrity was not knowledgeable, it would demonstrate to the public that we really need education in this area. On the other hand, if the celebrity knew a lot about the issue, his or her response would serve as valuable input to people following the news.

During our conversation, I would also try to get the celebrity to react to a claim made in a major newspaper, that crop modification by molecular methods is not any more dangerous than crop modification by traditional methods. I would ask him, why do you think we are suddenly so concerned with this efficient new technique of **cross breeding**（杂交育种）？ After all, humans have experimented with cross breeding for centuries and never worried whether it would create adverse effects. Hopefully, the media would report on all of these points.

In fact, my **rationale**（全部理由，根本原因） for asking this question is that famous people create controversies, which then get covered in the media. What better thing than to use my questions to create some buzz about genetically modified foods? If public discussions are generated because of this query, we might be able to dispel many misunderstandings about the science of GM foods.

苏珊评析

这道假设题可以有很多种写法。例如，考生可以问名人一个有趣的问题：If you were a flower, what would you be？或者问严肃的问题：What do you think the key to a successful career is？或What can people do to fight global warming？

注意两个方面：第一，提出问题之前要考虑好你向名人提出这个问题是出于什么原因。第二，作文里可以提到名人的名字，也可以泛泛地说a celebrity或a movie star。

尽管这篇高分范文中的第一段很短，但把考生感兴趣的话题（转基因食物）和考生要提问的具体问题都交代清楚了。第二段的风趣之处在于考生说尽管自己提问了，但他怀疑名人是否有丰富的知识来回答自己的问题。因为世界上大多数人对转基因食品的了解并不多。第三段沿着这个思路继续论述，说不论名人是否博学，转基因食品的对话有利于提高公众对此话题的认识。很显然，通过名人的影响力使该话题出现在媒体上，这是考生向名人提问转基因食品的原因。第四段顺着这个问题陈述了考生想问名人的其他几个问题。提问的目的都是想通过媒体的报道，提高公众对“杂交育种”的意识。总结段总结了考生提问的原因，强调媒体的争议和公众的讨论有助于破除转基因食品的谣言。

4 · If you were asked to...

If you were asked to write a book about your hometown, what would you write about? Why?

Use specific details and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

Cuisine

Imperial homes

Traffic and pollution

Future

History of universities in my town

Long tradition of university students coming here

How it affects the town

高分范文4

My hometown, Beijing, is not only the capital city, it is also one of the most interesting places in China. If I were to write a book about it, I would focus on three aspects: Its food, its imperial past and its future as **a cosmopolitan city**（国际都市）.

All Chinese pay a lot of attention to food. Beijing is especially blessed because it is a city of immigrants, who have brought their **home cuisines**（家乡菜） to their new adopted home. A trip to a neighborhood restaurant can turn out to be a **culinary**（烹饪的）adventure. Every corner of Beijing has restaurants operated by people from all over the country. Oftentimes the **wait staff**（服务员） comes from the owner's hometown and speaks the local language; for example, the Cantonese and Sichuanese dialects, or Mongolian, **Uyghur**（维吾尔语） and **Dai**（傣语）. Writing about the friendly staff in these small restaurants and the diversity of dishes would be a pleasure.

The second aspect of Beijing I would write about is the imperial homes and gardens which were once inhabited by emperors and their households. For example, I would talk about the Forbidden City and the Summer Palace. After describing the landscaping, architecture, and furnishings, I would devote a few pages to the historical conditions that led to one single family living in splendor while the masses lived in poverty.

At the end of the book, I would **speculate about**（推测） the future of my hometown. Beijing today is literally a lab and playground for international architecture. Everywhere one looks, there are landmark office buildings and even **residential communities**（住宅小区，住宅社区） designed by foreign firms. In contrast to the standard traditional Chinese buildings found in the hutong, the new designs lend the city a cosmopolitan air. Of course, congested traffic and pollution have come along with the new prosperity.

Throughout, I would try to **strike a balance**（做到平衡，做到公平的安排） by describing the things I enjoy as well as the city's problems. Moreover, I would certainly write about the ways in which my hometown could work toward a brighter future.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生假设写一本以家乡为主题的书。一篇优秀的作文应该包含两项内容：选取家乡最有特色的几个点；选取这几个点的原因。

第一段很简洁，谈到自己的家乡是北京，北京是中国的首都，然后列出下文要讲的三个方面：美食、古都的历史和国际化都市的未来。第二段至第四段分别从这三个方面来描述。总结段说北京好的一面“我”会写，存在的问题也会写，还会对其未来的发展提出建议。

5 · If you could go back in time...

Time travel is not yet possible. However, if you could go back in time, when and where would you go?

Use specific reasons and details to explain your answer.

写作构思

- Travel to Paris around 1900
- See Picasso and other artists and writers in coffee houses

- Time warp
- Peking Man
- Bering land bridge
- Fact-finding trip

高分范文5

Most of what we know about the prehistoric world is based on speculations by paleontologists and archaeologists. By traveling in time, I could see for myself what happened in prehistory. Consequently, if I could go through a **time warp**（时光偏差）, I would choose to go to two prehistoric times and places.

First, I would travel to a location southwest of modern day Beijing, an area where the remains of Peking Man were found. I would want to see if Peking Man (a Homo erectus species) was still there when Homo sapiens arrived. If both Homo erectus and Homo sapiens were in the area, I would observe whether there was any mingling between the tribes. This might **shed light on**（为.....提供线索） the Chinese gene pool.

After that, I would set the time travel machine for a point in time 12,000 years ago and travel to Siberia. I would hike across the Bering land bridge, thinking about the great forces of nature that made it possible for humans in Asia to travel to North America. I would marvel how climate change could eventually melt so much ice that the entire land bridge would become part of the ocean floor. In addition, I would **muse**（沉思） about how nature closed off the Americas. When this happened, native Americans lost contact with other continents and had to develop their cultures all by themselves.

From Alaska, I would continue to walk south along the coastline until I reached the area that is now Washington State. I would chat with the local tribes and observe how they lived. As I trekked southwards, I would keep my eyes open for giant mammals such as saber-toothed cats and ground sloths. I would explore whether they became extinct because humans killed them off or whether they

were driven to extinction by climate change.

Essentially, I would turn this opportunity into two fact-finding trips. I would **put modern theories to the test** (检验现代理论). This would certainly put to bed some controversies and allow future science to be built on a more solid foundation.

苏珊评析

这道写作题的假设属于奇思幻想，让考生想象时光之旅。作文应该包含年代、目的地以及选择此目的地的原因。注意，原因是评分中最重要的因素。

在这篇高分范文的第一段，考生开门见山谈自己时光之旅的原因：人们都是通过古生物学家和考古学家的推测来了解史前世界的，“我”想亲自去体验。“我”想去两个历史时期的目的地。第二段描述了第一个目的地，访问北京猿人的遗址。第三段和第四段描述了第二个目的地。考生详细描写了旅行路线（从西伯利亚穿过白令海峡，到达今天的华盛顿州），同时还提到了想去这些地方的原因。这些目的地是和科学探索联系在一起的，如：I would explore whether they became extinct because humans killed them off or whether they were driven to extinction by climate change. 这些内容使作文前后更连贯。总结段非常简洁，重申了这次旅行的原因：科学探索和发现事实。

建立自己的写作句型库

If I had an opportunity to create a new holiday, I would use it to heighten people's awareness of x 如果我有机会设立一个新节日，我将利用这个节日来增强人们对于.....的意识

If I had an opportunity to create a new holiday, I would use it to heighten people's awareness of the fragility of the Earth's environment.

拓展 If I had an opportunity to create a new holiday, I would use it to heighten people's awareness of water conservation.

I would name my holiday "x" to emphasize that... 我将我的节日命名为.....，借此强调.....

I would name my holiday "Home Day" to emphasize that the Earth is our common home.

拓展 I would name my holiday "Water Day" to emphasize that clean water is a treasure to be protected.

Through the enactment of [HOLIDAY NAME], we could VERB 通过设立.....节，我们能.....

Through the enactment of Home Day, we could educate ourselves.

拓展 Through the enactment of Family Day, we could take time to appreciate the people in our families.

There is just one thing that bothers me: the x 唯一让我烦恼的事情是.....

There is just one thing that bothers me: the location.

拓展 There is just one thing that bothers me: the cost.

If it were possible, I would VERB and VERB 如果可能的话，我会.....并.....

If it were possible, I would pack up all my things and move to a different place.

拓展 If it were possible, I would tear down the existing bathroom and build a new one.

If I had a chance to ask a celebrity a question, I would ask about x 我若有机会向名人提问，我将问关于.....的事

If I had a chance to ask a celebrity a question, I would ask about genetically modified foods (also known as GM foods).

拓展 If I had a chance to ask a celebrity a question, I would ask him what the secret of his success was.

In fact, my rationale for asking this question is that... 事实上，我问这个问题的理由是.....

In fact, my rationale for asking this question is that famous people create controversies, which then get covered in the media.

拓展 In fact, my rationale for asking this question is that celebrities can help get funding for a good cause.

If I were to write a book about it, I would focus on three aspects: Its x, its y and its z 如果我准备写一本这方面的书，我将侧重以下三个方面.....

If I were to write a book about it, I would focus on three aspects: its food, its imperial past and its future as a cosmopolitan city.

拓展 If I were to write a book about it, I would focus on three aspects: Its history, its people and its economy.

Writing about the x and y would be a pleasure. 写一些关于.....和.....的内容将会是一种乐趣。

Writing about the friendly staff in these small restaurants and the diversity of dishes would be a pleasure.

拓展 Writing about the fishing industry and seafood restaurants would be a pleasure.

The second aspect of [HOMETOWN NAME] I would write about is the x and y which... 我要写.....的第二个方面是.....和.....

The second aspect of Beijing I would write about is the imperial homes and gardens which were once inhabited by emperors and their households.

拓展 The second aspect of New York I would write about is the development of the Broadway shows which became popular in the 19th century.

At the end of the book, I would speculate about x 我会在书的结尾推测.....

At the end of the book, I would speculate about the future of my hometown.

拓展 At the end of the book, I would speculate about ways that mass transportation could be improved.

By traveling in time, I could see for myself what happened in x 通过时光旅行，我能亲眼看到.....发生了什么

By traveling in time, I could see for myself what happened in prehistory.

拓展 By traveling in time, I could see for myself what happened in medieval Japan.

After that, I would set the time travel machine for a point in time x years ago and travel to y 之后，我会将时光旅行器设定到某个点，去.....旅行

After that, I would set the time travel machine for a point in time 12,000 years ago and travel to Siberia.

拓展 After that, I would set the time travel machine for a point in time 100 years ago and travel to my great-grandfather's home.

16 **Open-ended describe and discuss: Discuss the causes**
Describe a custom
如何应对开放型题型

- 本章重点技能培养
 - 如何描述、讨论或解释一种相对抽象的现象
 - 如何建立逻辑连贯性
- 解读常考题

本章讨论的“开放型题型”是指要求考生进行“描述”和“讨论”某事件或某一现象的写作题。很多情况下是要求考生讨论原因、描述某一习俗等。

开放型写作题是独立写作题中最难的题型之一，因为考生需要以一种相对抽象的逻辑方式讨论或解释问题。例如，写作题经常会问影响因素或隐含的根本原因；有的开放型作文题会问影响某一趋势的因素；有的要求考生描述本国文化中，哪些文化较为重要；而有的要求考生阐述影响他们的某一事件。

尽管写作题库里的开放型题型并没有“二选一”题型多，但考生还是需要认真备考。

开放题型的写作题通常有以下几种形式：

- 1 · **Describe** an animal that is important to your country's national identity. **Explain** how it contributes to your country's culture.
- 2 · Some events seem to occur randomly. **Describe** a significant event in your life that you did not expect. **Explain** how it affected your life.
- 3 · Access to clean water is becoming increasingly important. **Discuss** the **factors** contributing to this trend.
- 4 · One reason that people attend university is to find a job. What are **other reasons** why people attend university? **Discuss** one or more of these reasons.
- 5 · In the 21st century, more and more people are choosing to work for themselves. **Discuss** the **causes** of this trend.
- 6 · The birth rate in many developed countries is declining. Many reasons for this trend have been put forward; for example, the lack of money. Discuss how having children can influence a young couple's lives.

现在看一则例子：

苏珊举例

Directions:

Read the question below. You have 30 minutes to plan, write, and revise your essay. Typically, an effective response will contain a minimum of 300 words.

Describe a food that is important to your country's sense of identity. Explain how this food contributes to your country's "food culture."

Use specific examples and details to support your answer.

就深度和广度而言，这道写作题是典型的开放型写作题。本题要求考生描写一种能够代表本国形象特征的食物。换句话说，国民会把这种食物看作本国饮食文化的一部分。如果这不足以构成挑战的话，本题还进一步要求考生解释这种食物是怎么促成该国一种文化的形成。

考生可以采用多种方法来写这篇作文。一种方法是选择一种该国人民最常吃的食物。例如，日本人以大米为主食。另一种方法是选择一种有特殊象征意义的食物，要么对本国人民有特殊意义，要么对外国人有特殊意义。例如，在美国，由于有许多像麦当劳一样的全球连锁快餐企业，奶酪汉堡就有其象征意义。不论考生采用哪一种方法，都应该从文化的角度看待食物，就像人类学家看待问题的方式一样。考生举的例子应该能够全面阐明这种食物，这样就可以解释为什么这种食物会成为该国的一种文化。

Exercise 1

根据上面例题的题目要求写一篇作文。初稿完成后，继续学习下部分的内容。仔细阅读高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的新知识完成Exercise 2。

高分范文

Rice
Soy sauce
Pigs / pork
Ease of raising them
Cuisine
Meat, skin and blood

高分范文

Pork is extremely important in many ways to China's sense of identity. In fact, when we say the word for "meat" ("rou") in Chinese, we are referring to pork. Among the Han people of China, pork is by far the preferred source of protein.

For one thing, pigs are the most widely bred livestock in China. They are easy to breed, so pork is relatively affordable to the majority of the population. This is because pigs can live in a variety of climates. In fact, they can even live in where there are concentrations of people. Secondly, pigs are quite tenacious and do not **contract disease**（得病） easily. As a result, one does not need much expertise to raise them. In fact, many rural families raise pigs for their own consumption. Pigs eat almost everything, "recycling" kitchen **leftovers**（残羹剩菜） people would otherwise throw away. No wonder pigs are so **ubiquitous**（随处可见的）.

Pork is a favorite in Chinese cuisine. In the South, my native region, pork is particularly beloved. My mother prepares at least one pork dish a day. I have been exposed to dozens of dishes that make use of the meat, skin and even the blood. Sometimes we even have several pork dishes at the same meal. Although our family rarely makes pig blood soup, there are many little shops that sell it. For a snack, Western children might grab a chocolate bar or some chips, but we would usually buy some cooked food. I still remember when I was little, on our way home from school, we would stop by little stands and choose from a variety of foods, such as fish ball soup and fried sweet potatoes. For me and many of my classmates, however, the snack of choice was pig blood soup.

Some foreigners may think that rice is the food with the most significance to Chinese, but in fact not everyone in China likes to eat rice. Northerners often prefer noodles or other **flour-based staples**（面粉类主食）. Pork, on the other hand, is well-loved across the country, at least among the Han people. It has become **an integral part of our culture**（我们文化不可缺少的一部分）. Unless we all turn into vegetarians, I cannot imagine us living without pigs.

万用写作模板

〔食物名称〕 is extremely important in many ways to _____ sense of identity. In fact, 〔用一两个句子说明某种重要食物〕.

For one thing, 〔食物名称〕 are the most _____ in [China]. 〔用两三个句子说明这种食物的来源、产地等信息〕.

〔食物名称〕 is a favorite in [Chinese] cuisine. 〔用三四个句子说明这种食物怎么受国人的喜爱，怎么烹饪、食用。如果能加上自己生活中的例子更好〕.

Some foreigners may think that 〔第二种食物的名称〕 is the food with the most significance to [Chinese], but in fact not everyone in [China] likes to eat 〔第二种食物的名称〕. 〔举例说明哪些人不喜欢吃这种食物〕. 〔第一种食物名称〕, on the other hand, is well-loved across the country, at least among the Han people. It has become an integral part of our culture. Unless we all turn into vegetarians, I cannot imagine us living without 〔第一种食物名称〕.

范文第一段，考生直入主题，说猪肉对中国人意义重大，人们常说的“肉”就是指“猪肉”。第二段解释中国人普遍食用猪肉的原因，即猪具有容易饲养、不易得病等特点。第三段描述了猪肉在中国饮食中的重要性。考生用讲故事的形式给出了具体的例子和细节，提到自己家的饮食习惯和放学后吃小吃的故事。总结段紧扣主题，说明食物是如何和一种民族文化相关联。最后一句很简短，强调了猪肉在中国人饮食中的重要性。

★ PCC PCC学习方法 逻辑上做到前后连贯

在前面的篇章里，我们学习了如何通过有技巧地重复关键词来增强文章的连贯性。本章继续讨论连贯性。本章将用PCC PCC学习方法来说明如何通过内容的选择、文章结构的组建来建立上下文的逻辑关系。内容的选择主要是指选择例子和论据等，文章结构的组建主要指内容的逻辑顺序，这些都是决定考生作文分数的因素。

增强连贯性的三个简单步骤

- 1) 写作前，考生先选一个自己能够“胜任”的话题。不仅熟悉该语境的词汇，还要能够想出和提纲相符的两到三个例子或分论点。
- 2) 想一想以什么逻辑顺序排列论点和例子。如果准备讲故事，可以按时间顺序排列论点；如果是解释某个现象的原因，可以按原因的重要性进行排列，最重要的原因放在后面。
- 3) 考虑好文章的内容和结构后，开始动笔。写作文的过程中铭记要让读者理解所有论点的逻辑结构和各论点之间的联系。

许多考生因为不知道如何为一篇作文设计结构，所以很苦恼。以下面这道写作题为例，我们来看一看如何设定一篇作文的结构。

Life is full of events that change our lives. Some events occur because of a decision we make. Others are due to circumstances outside our control. Describe a significant event in your past and explain how it affected your life.

面对这道题，考生需要做三件事：第一，选择一件改变了你生活的事件；第二，描述该事件；第三，说明该事件怎么影响了你的生活。

构思时，考生可以列出每一个论点以保证每一段都有足够的内容可写。因为题目问该事件如何影响了考生的生活，所以至少要讲述两到三个方面的影响。

	事件（主题）	影响
第一段	What happened on that [Shanghai] trip would change the course of my life. [It changed in several ways.]	
第二段		Because my aunt had an accident and I went to Shanghai to see her, I realized that I wanted to be in that city .
第三段		My aunt asked me to stay and live with her in Shanghai .
第四段 （如果需要写，再加上有时间的話）		With my aunt’s financial support , I went to school in Shanghai up through high school .
总结段 （转述）	It was in this way that the trip I took to visit my injured aunt changed my whole life .	My aunt will pay for my college studies in the US. I will definitely work hard to take care of her because I am grateful .

考生的上海之旅改变了其生活。第二段至第四段分别讲述了故事情节的发展。从某种程度上说，每一个故事情节的发展都是这次旅行的结果。

因为题目要求陈述过去的某个事件，所以每一段都是故事某个环节的陈述。但是每个环节里都必须说明这件重要的事（这次旅行）是如何影响考生生活的。例如，第四段：**My family could never have afforded to send me to schools in Shanghai, let alone America.**这说明这件事的“影响”之一是考生能够上更好的学校。这个例子证明了紧扣题目的作文是如何建立逻辑连贯性的。通过这个例子大家可以知道，带着明确的写作目的写好每一个段落，这有助于把每一个分论点有机地和论点联系在一起。

因为考生只有30分钟的写作时间，直接在第一段陈述论点会好一些。然后，接下来的每一段都根据这一论点进行论述。

建立连贯性的另一个策略是在段落第一句陈述本段的论点。这种策略不适用于讲故事的作文；但题目若是要求考生分析原因，这种策略非常有用。

考生可以自由地阐明论点，但要记住，构思过程中就要确定接下来要讲什么。如果所有的段落都能构成一个整体，即使文中出现几个不严重的语法错误也是没关系的，因为评分人看重的是“统一性、渐进性和连贯性”。

● 要使文章富有逻辑连贯性，可运用以下策略：

1· 文章结构层次清晰、有序。例如，如果需要用两三个原因来解释当前人们的结婚年龄比以前大这一趋势，就一定不能毫无次序地列举原因，要按从不重要到最重要的逻辑顺序排列原因。

2· 每一个符合逻辑的论点都要用一个段落来阐述。这可以让评分人一眼就能看出文章的结构层次。

3· 把每一个段落都当做一篇“小文章”来对待。也就是说，段落的展开也要做到富有逻辑连贯性。

4· 段与段之间的衔接要符合逻辑，承接自然。可以通过分论点和例子的排列顺序实现文章的流畅性，也可以像**Another factor is...**句式一样通过信号词**another**来实现文章的流畅性。

5· 运用连接词（**consequently**等）和指示词（**This food**）等来衔接上下文。

6· 除了总结段需要重复论点或论据之外，其他地方不要重复论点或论据。

7· 在总结段，总结句要呼应上文的论点。

建立自己的写作句型库

For one thing, x are the most ADVERB x in [COUNTRY] 首先，.....在（某国家）是最.....

For one thing, pigs are the most widely bred livestock in China.

拓展 For one thing, bread is the most commonly eaten food in Russia.

x is a favorite in [COUNTRY ADJECTIVE] cuisine. 在（某个国家的）菜肴里，.....是最受欢迎的食物。

Pork is a favorite in Chinese cuisine.

拓展 Curry is a favorite in Thai cuisine.

Some foreigners may think that x is the food with the most significance to [COUNTRY PEOPLE], but in fact not everyone in [COUNTRY] likes to eat x 一些外国人可能认为.....

是（某国人民）最重要的食材，但事实上，并非所有的.....人都喜欢食用.....

Some foreigners may think that rice is the food with the most significance to Chinese, but in fact not everyone in China likes to eat rice.

拓展 Some foreigners may think that pizza is the food with the most significance to Italians, but in fact not everyone in Italy likes to eat pizza.

Exercise 2

学完高分范文、万用写作模板、赋能技能和写作句型库，运用所学的技能修改你的初稿，并认真看修改之处。然后用学到的新句型去练习下面五道预测题的写作。

写作预测题

1 · Describe a significant event and explain how it affected...

Life is full of events that change our lives. Some events occur because of a decision we make. Others are due to circumstances outside our control. Describe a significant event in your past and explain how it affected your life.

写作构思

Had to take the college entrance exam a second time

Taught me to stand up after a setback

Trip to Shanghai

Aunt had an accident

Went to school

Learned Shanghai dialect

高分范文1

I would not be sitting here taking the TOEFL test had it not been for a trip I took in the summer ten years ago. My aunt was in a Shanghai hospital due to a bad fall, so I was going there with my mother. What happened on that trip would change the course of my life.

My first impression of Shanghai is hard to describe. Even though I had already seen pictures on television, **the enormity of the city**（城市之大） did not hit me until I was there. As we walked into the gated compound where my aunt lived, I was amazed at the **immaculate**（完美的） landscaping that greeted us. It included a huge fountain and an elaborate garden. I said to myself then, this is where I want to live in the future.

We dropped off our luggage at the apartment and rushed to the hospital. Fortunately, she was doing much better, and she came home three days later. We ended up staying at her apartment for over a month, taking care of her and keeping her company. My aunt's

affection for me grew as she regained her health. Towards the end of our stay, she asked my mother if she could keep me in Shanghai indefinitely. My mother said it was up to me to decide. Needless to say, I accepted my aunt's invitation.

I subsequently transferred to an elementary school in Shanghai and went on to high school there as well. My aunt treated me like her own daughter. She financed my education and biannual trips to visit my parents. Now, she also plans to finance my education in America. My family could never have afforded to send me to schools in Shanghai, let alone America.

It was in this way that the trip I took to visit my injured aunt changed my whole life. Now I have another set of "parents" in my life. I shall work hard to repay my debt to them and take care of them when they are old.

苏珊评析

实际上这道写作题要求考生讲述一个“因果”故事。这种写作题给考生一个讲述个人故事的机会，但要连贯地说明是故事中的什么因素引发命运的转折。

在这篇高分范文中，考生以一句戏剧性的开场白说现在自己坐在考场上参加托福考试，这是十年前的上海之行带来的后果。然后叙述了整个事件——阿姨发生了一场意外以及“我”和母亲的上海之行。第二段描述了自己对这座城市的第一印象：I said to myself then, this is where I want to live in the future. 第三段继续叙述事件的发展——阿姨康复之后请考生留下来和自己一起生活。第四段叙述了从小学到高中的学习费用全部由阿姨支付，她还打算送“我”去美国留学。总结段重申了第一段的论点，即这件事改变了自己的人生。考生在最后一句表达了自己的感激之情和报答亲人的心愿。

2 · Discuss the factors contributing to this trend...

The ability to read and write is more important than ever. Discuss the factors contributing to this trend.

Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

写作构思

Speech and human evolution

Written texts

Printing press

Internet

Complexity of work

College education is needed for jobs, so need literacy

Global businesses, e-mail more important

高分范文2

In the 21st century, the ability to read and write is vital, and the importance of these skills will only continue to grow. There are many reasons why this is true. For one thing, we live in a time when most the information we need for our lives and jobs is not coded in our biological genes. Rather, it is found in written form, stored in printed books and digitally, on computers. Because the amount of written information is increasing all the time, it is vital that we find efficient ways to absorb it.

Of course, it was not always the case that written texts were essential. One reason for this is that our earliest communication was accomplished through hand gestures and speech. During the long history of human evolution, we slowly developed the capacity for language. Because we could communicate with one another, we were able to compete and survive, adapting to hostile environments. A written form of language started to appear, as our hunting and foraging lifestyle gave way to an agricultural lifestyle.

Another important factor influencing the increasing importance of reading and writing is the emergence of **the printing press** (印刷机). The earliest written texts were **chronicles** (编年) of historical events and religious teachings. These were handwritten and then passed down from generation to generation. However, when the printing press was invented, philosophical ideas and scientific theories blossomed and were quickly **disseminated** (传播). As a result, people naturally began reading and writing more than before.

The recent birth of the Internet and the digitalization of information has further speeded the publishing of information, leading to what some people call an "information explosion," also requiring us to read and write.

All of these events have shaped a world whose speed and complexity could not have been foreseen by our forefathers. From the little things in life such as reading manuals and learning to use a cell phone to accessing materials in the workplace, written information flows from one individual to the next at an unprecedented pace.

苏珊评析

写好这篇作文，考生要交代人类历史上对读写产生深远影响的几个阶段，借此说明当前读写能力为什么越来越重要。

在第一段，考生先陈述当今社会的大部分信息都储存在人脑以外的地方，这意味着如果人们想使用信息，必须能找到信息并对其进行处理。第二段描述了在人类历史早期阶段，人们只能通过手势和言语进行交流，直到后来出现了文字。第三段描述了印刷机的出现（以及当时哲学思想和科学理论的发展）是如何影响对读写的需求。第四段提出因特网是致使“信息爆炸”的一个因素。总结段改述了作文主体部分提到的几个因素，认为当前的信息以前所未有的速度传播着。

3 · Discuss one or more of these reasons...

One reason that people work is to obtain money. What are other reasons why people work? Discuss one or more of these reasons.

Use specific examples and details to support your answer.

写作构思

Boring

Health

Friendship

Fulfill potential

Lets people be creative

Allows people to experience new things

Other people need my skills

高分范文3

People seem to enjoy play more than work. But all play and no work makes for a boring life. Work not only provides us with the necessities we need to stay alive, it also satisfies the needs for health, friendship and self-actualization.

First, work keeps us in good health. In order to stay both mentally and physically healthy, we need to be active. Studies have shown the more we exercise our brains and our bodies, the better shape we will be in. For example, there are many instances of people's health quickly deteriorating as soon as they retire. Doctors have suggested that this is caused by the lifestyle change which deprives retirees of activity. Personally, I hope to continue to work until the day I die, simply to stay clear-headed and strong.

Second, work brings us friendship. When we are young, most of our friends tend to be our schoolmates. However, after college most of us have to leave our school friends and move to wherever our jobs take us. That means we must either find new friends in our new surroundings or be alone. Imagine a young man who comes from a wealthy family and decides not to work. When his college friends all go off to their new jobs, he will feel very much alone.

Third, work allows us to fulfill our potential. We are all endowed with special talents. It is important to prove to ourselves that we can do certain things well. For example, I believe I have a **knack**（本领） for organizing people in order to complete a certain task. At my company, we generally work in a team setting for whatever assignment we have been given. I am usually the person who gets everybody to contribute ideas. I derive a sense of accomplishment from using my interpersonal skills, especially when I see that my efforts help our team do a better job.

I have listed but three reasons for working; there are doubtless many more. Almost everyone **craves**（渴望） the energy produced during work and is searching for meaning beyond money.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生讨论人们赚钱以外的其他工作原因。这并不难写，因为人们工作有很多原因。考生可以选择一个或几个原因来写。注意，这道写作题还有暗含的一层意思，即要求考生比较工作和赚钱的不同动机。

高分范文第一段，考生开门见山地提出中心论点，还有列举了人们工作的三个原因：

健康、友谊和自我价值的实现。第二段至第四段分别陈述这三个原因。总结段简短但很有力度。在全文的最后一句，考生陈述了自己的信念，即除了赚钱外，每个人都渴望工作带来的活力，都在寻找生命的意义。

4 · Discuss the causes of this trend...

On average, people live longer these days. Discuss the causes of this trend.

Use reasons and specific examples to support your answer.

写作构思

"Average" life span

Humans getting stronger

Nutrition

Sanitation, Bacteria

People read about health on the Internet

Modern medicine

高分范文4

From ancient times, people have always tried to find ways to live longer. In many societies, attempts were made to invent some wonder drug that would make a person live forever. They have all failed. However, it is an undisputed fact that the **"average" life span**（平均寿命）—a statistical number—has increased dramatically over the last few centuries. The three causes most often cited for this increased **longevity**（长寿） are nutrition, sanitation and medicine.

First, we all know malnourished infants tend to get sick more easily. Without adequate nutrition, many children never reach adulthood. Moreover, in agricultural societies, famine and the lack of water can lead to deaths in adults. The Industrial Revolution brought us new agricultural technologies which increased food production, providing more nourishment for children and adults. This contributed significantly to the lengthening of the average human life.

Second, unclean conditions lead to diseases and early death. Bacteria, quite harmful to humans, thrive in environments with discarded garbage and raw sewage. To **thwart**（阻挠） bacteria, modern societies now use flush toilets to help dispose of waste. In addition, communities set up sanitation departments to make sure garbage and sewage is safely removed and processed. Better sanitation leads to fewer **pathogens**（病菌）, which obviously helps **lengthen**（延长） human life.

Finally, modern medicine has helped treat and even prevent many diseases. For example, penicillin and other antibiotics have helped **stem infections**（制止感染）. Modern societies have **harnessed**（利用） new drugs and techniques, as well as building clean hospitals to provide efficient care to sick people. Every life saved this way increases the average life span of a society.

There may be other factors that cause increased **life expectancy** (预期寿命), but I think the above three are the chief ones. One day, if scientists can figure out how to slow the aging process using genetic or other technologies, I am sure the average life span will get another huge boost.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生讨论目前人们越来越长寿的原因。谈原因的文章至少要谈到两点。

在第一段，考生通过描述两个事实引出话题：过去，人们总在寻求长生不老的仙丹；几个世纪以来，人们的平均寿命延长了很多。在这一段的结尾，考生提出自己的观点——现代人长寿的原因有三点：营养、卫生条件和现代医药。第二段至第四段分别讲述了这三点原因。和上一篇作文用到的写作方法相同，考生在结尾段先说现代人长寿可能还有其他原因，然后展望了基因技术让人们更长寿的可能性。

5 · Discuss how x has taken place...

Some things are learned outside the classroom. For example, one can learn from a parttime job or from other people. Discuss how this type of learning has taken place in your life. Explain in detail what you have learned.

写作构思

Language

Social behavior and values

Meaning of friendship

On-the-job training

Problem-solving in the real world

高分范文5

Before public schools were common, especially in rural areas, many people gained practical and important survival skills in informal settings at home or out in the wild. Formal schooling is a relatively new phenomenon and has certainly not replaced the need for learning outside the classroom.

One of the first things that all of us learn is language. I doubt that anyone learns to speak his or her native tongue in the classroom. The minute we are born, our mother, father and other family members start to speak to us and we begin to learn our language. At school we continue to learn our own language, such as learning to write. Moreover, we may choose to learn foreign languages. The amount of language learning that takes place before we start school is **mind-boggling** (令人吃惊的).

Another vital lesson we learn outside the classroom is social behavior. From our parents, we learn how to act properly. Some

people learn important moral values from the church. Our behavior is also shaped by interaction with other children or by observation of adults. Before we step into a school building, we have already absorbed many basic values.

Lastly, I would like to mention on-the-job training. School introduces us to necessary knowledge. However, there is no way that standardized education in group settings can foresee every knowledge or skill that an individual will need in the future. When I first started to work a few months ago, I was shocked to hear my colleagues speaking a professional jargon that was like a foreign language to me. It was only after a few months of learning about our trade that I gradually began to grasp the basic **terminology** (学科术语) and concepts that industry people use.

To be sure, I think schools provide an efficient and necessary means of educating a large population in modern societies. But we cannot rely on them for everything we need to learn. My education began at home and continues now in the company where I work. With an **inquisitive** (好奇的) mind, one can always keep learning.

苏珊评析

这道写作题要求考生谈谈自己对课堂内习得与课堂外习得的观点。构思时不要忘了个人生活中的故事和例子。这道题的难点主要是能否迅速想到课堂外可以学到的东西并能够拿来讨论。

在这篇范文中，考生先从历史的角度来谈学习——人类在课堂之外已经学习了很多个世纪。第二段介绍了在课堂外学习的第一个例子——母语学习。第三段讲述了社会行为的学习，即孩子如何受家人和周围环境的影响从而形成自己的价值观。第四段讲工作中的学习。注意作文中的观点是如何呈线性发展的，从人类历史早期到儿童时期，最后到职场。这是作文富有连贯性的典型例子。总结段谈到，课堂学习有价值，但许多重要技能都是在课堂外学会的。

建立自己的写作句型库

I would not be VERBing had it not been for a x I VERBed... [TIME PHRASE IN THE PAST] 如果我没有.....，我现在就不会.....

I would not be sitting here taking the TOEFL test had it not been for a trip I took in the summer ten years ago.

拓展 I would not be working in this bank had it not been for an internship I had during my senior summer.

What happened on that x would change the course of my life. 发生的.....改变了我的 人生。

What happened on that trip would change the course of my life.

拓展 What happened on that day would change the course of my life.

I said to myself then, this is... in the future. 然后我告诉自己，这就是将来.....

I said to myself then, this is where I want to live in the future.

拓展 I said to myself then, this is the man I want to marry.

I subsequently VERBed in [PLACE] and VERBED there as well. 我随后.....，还在那

里.....

I subsequently transferred to an elementary school in Shanghai and went on to high school there as well.

拓展 I subsequently volunteered in Africa and learned some medical techniques there as well.

It was in this way that the x changed my whole life. 正是.....改变了我的整个人生。

It was in this way that the trip I took to visit my injured aunt changed my whole life.

拓展 It was in this way that the job interview changed my whole life.

In the 21st century, the ability to VERB is vital, and the importance of these skills will only continue to grow. 在21世纪，.....的能力至关重要，而且这些技能只会越来越重要。

In the 21st century, the ability to read and write is vital, and the importance of these skills will only continue to grow.

拓展 In the 21st century, the ability to speak multiple languages is vital, and the importance of these skills will only continue to grow.

Of course, it was not always the case that... 当然，.....也并非总是如此。

Of course, it was not always the case that written texts were essential.

拓展 Of course, it was not always the case that mobile phones were so common.

All of these events have shaped a world whose x could not have been foreseen by our forefathers. 这些所有的事件决定了一个.....的世界，这是我们祖先无法预见的。

All of these events have shaped a world whose speed and complexity could not have been foreseen by our forefathers.

拓展 All of these events have shaped a world whose connectivity could not have been foreseen by our forefathers.

Work not only provides us with x, it also satisfies the needs for y 工作不仅提供给我们.....，还能满足我们对.....的需求

Work not only provides us with the necessities we need to stay alive, it also satisfies the needs for health, friendship and self-actualization.

拓展 Work not only provides us with money to support us, it also satisfies the needs for social interaction.

The three causes most often cited for x are a, b and c.的三个提到最多的原因是.....

The three causes most often cited for this increased longevity are nutrition, sanitation and medicine.

拓展 The three causes most often cited for global warming are fossil fuels, methane emissions and deforestation.

This contributed significantly to the x 这对促成.....具有极大的作用

This contributed significantly to the lengthening of the average human life.

拓展 This contributed significantly to the popularity of movies.

There may be other factors that cause x, but I think the above three are the chief ones.

也许.....还有其他因素，但我认为以上的三点是最主要的因素。

There may be other factors that cause increased life expectancy, but I think the above three are the chief ones.

拓展 There may be other factors that cause students to **plagiarize** (抄袭), but I think the above three are the chief ones.

x is a relatively new phenomenon and has certainly not replaced the need for y是一个相对较新的现象，肯定不能取代.....的需求

Formal schooling is a relatively new phenomenon and has certainly not replaced the need for learning outside the classroom.

拓展 Distance learning is a relatively new phenomenon and has certainly not replaced the need for traditional classroom education.

It was only after [TIME PHRASE] that I gradually began to grasp the basic terminology and concepts that x use.之后我才逐渐掌握了.....的基本学科术语和概念。

It was only after a few months of learning about our trade that I gradually began to grasp the basic terminology and concepts that industry people use.

拓展 It was only after a year of practice that I gradually began to grasp the basic terminology and concepts that musicians use.

Appendix

附录

The Scoring of the TOEFL® iBT

新托福考试评分

★ 新托福考试成绩概述

新托福考试为决策机构提供了两套分数——总分和各部分分数。各部分的分数由“标准分”组成，标准分由原始分根据一个通用比例转换而来。标准分很重要，因为它可以让决策者对学生进行更公平的比较。

新托福考试成绩的满分如下：

阅读：	30
听力：	30
口语：	30
写作：	30
总分：	120

考生会收到“成绩反馈”的信息。该信息旨在帮助考生了解自己的水平。例如，阅读和听力部分，考生得分情况有Low（0～13）、Intermediate（14～21）或High（22～30）。口语部分，考生得分情况有Weak（0～9）、Limited（10～17）、Fair（18～25）或Good（26～30）。写作部分，考生得分情况有Limited（0～16）、Fair（17～23）或Good（24～30）。但是请注意，提交给大学的成绩单中不会有该成绩反馈信息。只有考生个人会收到此信息。

★ 新托福写作部分的分数

评分人

通常情况下，四个评分人判同一份写作试卷。这意味着新托福写作的评分比较客观，不是基于个人的主观看法。而且，据ETS所言，他们还会用自动评分系统评分，作为人工评分的补充。

如何评分？

新托福考试结束之后，包含考生作文的数字化文件会被发送到ETS，然后通过评分网络系统将两篇作文分配给评分人。

评分人根据新托福写作评分准则给考生的作文打分。有两套独立的评分准则：一套适用于综合写作，另一套适用于独立写作。这两道作文题都考查考生的整体语言能力。两道题的分数为0～5，但是一般不会打0分。

综合写作题的评分准则有严格的要求：文章必须包含讲座中的重要信息。如果考生遗漏了讲座中的一些信息，评分人会扣分。

评分准则中所说的“重要信息”是指教授在讲座中提到的三个分论点。得5分的综合作文必须连贯而准确地描述讲座中的三个分论点；对于试图描述三个分论点却因为词不达意而没有将论点之间的关系表达清楚的作文，得4分；如果考生只正确描述了两个分论点，能得

3分；如果只正确描述了一个分论点，只能得2分；1分的作文是那种遗漏讲座的重要信息，只抓住细枝末节信息的作文；如果作文的语言难以理解，也只能得1分。0分作文往往是因为考生交空白卷、完全跑题，或者考生照抄题目或阅读短文的内容。

对于独立作文，结构严谨、逻辑连贯、话题充分展开，这样的作文才能得5分。4分的作文可能只是逻辑连贯，但是话题没有展开。3分的文章可能逻辑不太连贯，文章意思有时难以理解，文中有语法和拼写错误。2分和1分的作文有一些更加严重的问题，比如结构不清晰、语言运用能力差等。如果考生几乎没写出什么实质性的内容、跑题，或者内容完全抄袭题目，那就只能得0分。因为独立写作题完全靠考生自己去构思，所以这道题对主题的展开和连贯性的要求比综合写作题高。

评分人给每篇作文判分之后，取平均分并转化成0~30的标准分，这个分数就是官方成绩单上的分数。

通过下面的转换表格，考生可以大致了解原始分和标准分之间的转换机制：

原始分	标准分
5.00	30
4.75	29
4.50	28
4.25	27
4.00	25
3.75	24
3.50	22
3.25	21
3.00	20
2.75	18
2.50	17
2.25	15
2.00	14
1.75	12
1.50	11
1.25	10
1.00	8
	7
	5
	4
	0

一般情况下评分人会给整数，比如2分，不会出现给2.5的情况。把原始分数转换成标准分需要计算，上面的表格只是一个数学推定法，帮考生大致了解转换过程。

成绩单

在两周之内，官方的写作分数（0~30之间）与阅读、听力和口语分数一起寄给考生和考生申请的所有大学。除此外，考生还会收到每篇作文的分数，形式如下：

Writing based on Reading and Listening (Task 1)

Writing based on Knowledge and Experience (Task 2)

考生会看到两篇作文0~5分的原始分。在成绩单的反馈分析部分，这个分数会被分成三个等级：Limited（1.0~2.0）、Fair（2.5~3.5）和Good（4~5）。这个反馈不会寄往考生申请的大学，而只是作为一个参考，供考生提高自己的能力。

★ 新托福考试分数的其他信息

1· 成绩单：考完试两周后，考生和决策者可以在线查看成绩。邮寄成绩单需要的时间长一些，大概一周到一个月的时间。每位考生都会收到一份成绩单，同时考试机构会将四份成绩单的正本寄到考生申请的大学。成绩单上只显示一次考试的成绩，也就是说，如果考生之前参加过新托福考试，以前的分数不会出现在最新的成绩单上。在考试后的两年之内，新托福考试的成绩都有效。

2· 最低总分：很多考生会问：“新托福需要考多少分才能进一所大学”？答案是：“视大学而定；视级别（本科或研究生）而定；有时还会视大学里的某个学院或系而定。”但是考生需要了解，很多有实力的大学要求新托福总分最低为80分。顶尖学校，如哈佛、麻省理工学院和芝加哥大学，总分可能不得低于100分，尤其当该考生从事商业、法律或通讯方面的研究时。科学和工程专业的学生可能只需要80分，或者更低。当然，也有只要69分就可以入学的大学。

3· 各部分所需的最低分数：有些大学对新托福考试各部分的最低分没有要求，而有一些大学对各部分有最低分要求，还会规定最低总分。有些大学虽然对各部分的最低分有要求，但没有单独列出最低总分。例如，一所知名大学的工程学院要求入学申请者阅读最低21分、听力最低18分、口语最低23分、写作最低22分。如果考生达到上述最低要求，则考生的总分为84分，但是该大学不会另外列出最低总分。

4· 如何查找你的目标大学对新托福考试的要求：如果你正在申请海外大学或奖学金，想了解目标大学对英语水平的要求，你必须到各所大学的网站上查看是否规定了最低托福分数。查找此类信息的最好方法是：先点击Admissions（招生），再点击International（国际的），然后查找English language proficiency（英语语言水平）或者类似的标题。

附录CD页

<http://2u4u.fltrp.com/fltrp/GoodsInteractive?ID=26928>